AL-BAHER

# CONNECT







	Let's remember	
Unit (1)	ieme 1: I discover muse	(5)
Unit (2)	-iie in my world	(14)
	Look around you Review (1)	(57)
meregibl	on Reader: le Places Around the Wor eme 2: Myself and other	(105)
<b>Unit (3)</b>	How we use our world	(114)
Unit (4)	We're on the move	(167)
	Review (2)	(213)
The Story	y: ri searches for home Listening Texts	(219) (237)
	Model Answers	(240)

# Lesson (1)

# LET'S REMEMBER

## Body

skeleton هيكل عظمي blood دم heart قلب muscles عضلات stomach

## Animals

mammals ثدييات reptiles أواحف birds due fish jellyfish

## Transportation

cab
ferry
معدیة
subway
rocket
ship

Clothes

23

کم

کتان

مجوهرات

### Technology

website موقع على الإنترنت مدونة شخصية vlog مدونة فيديو instant message

رسانة فورية بريد الكتروني email

#### Food

beans فول button
garlic ثوم sleeve
spices الما توابل linen
herbs اعشاب jewelry
bread خبز shirt

## Environments

coastal ساحلية desert معراوية polar قطبية mountainous

#### **Environmental Problems**

انهيار التربة erosion التعرية flood فيضان tsunami

### Study the following:

- Cairo is the largest city in Egypt.
- You shouldn't eat too many candies.
- Airplanes will use solar energy in the future.
- Today we're talking about recycling.
- We often eat our meals with bread.

## Lesson (2)

# LET'S REMEMBER

## Vocabulary

primary colors	ألوان اولية	presentation	عرفان
secondary colors	ألوان ثانوية	congestion	عردن الدحام
vertebrates	فقاريات	creativity	الداع
invertebrates	لا فقاربات	ice caps	وريا وريا
tidal energy	طاقة المد والجزر	amphibians	سر سوائيات
cold-blooded	ذوات الدم اليارد	lantern	برب د. فانوس -
right hemisphere	النصف الأيمن (للمخ)	citizenship	المواطئة
neighborhood	الحي السكني / المنطقة	Upper Egypt	صعبا مصر
touch-type	يكتب على لوحة المفاتيح باللمس	blind	كفيف
metropolitan areas	المناطق الحصرية	deaf	أصم
densely populated	دَاتَ كَتَافَةَ سِكَانِيةً عَالِيةً	senet	اعبم السنيت
sparsely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة	topic	موشوع

#### Read and learn

- Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body.
- There are five types of vertebrates mammals, reptiles, amphibians, fish, and birds.
- Red, yellow, and blue are primary colors.
- When you touch-type you can type without looking at the keyboard
- Congestion can be a problem in big cities.
- 6 If the polar ice caps melt, sea levels will rise.
- Senet is the world's oldest board game.
- The sea is a good place to get lidalenergy.

#### Let's remember

## Calisten and read.

: Hi Adam, what are you doing? Tarek

Hi Tarek. I'm doing my homework. Adam

We have to give a presentation about

different types of communication.

That sounds interesting! What type Tarek

are you studying?

I like reading about lots of different Adain

topics, so I think blogs are interesting.

It's great that people can write about their ideas and share

them online.

Llike vlogs. People make some great videos sometimes! Tarek

There are lots of different ways to communicate now. We can Adam

send messages more quickly than people could fifty years

Yes, it's much quicker and easier. When do you have to laren

present your work?

On Tuesday, but I'm nervous. I don't like talking to lots of Adam

people.

Don't worry, you're good at explaining things. I can help you Tarek

practice. Remember to speak slowly, smile, and try to look

confident!

Thank you, that's useful advice! Adam

# Steps of making a presentation about:

#### (Neighborhood)

First, we took some photos of the area we live in.

Then, we looked at the photos on our laptop.

Next, we chose the best photos from the laptop and printed them.

Finally, we made a class display of our work.





# **Past Simple Tense**

# | | | emember

Form The second form of the verb

Regular verbs ( We add (d / ed / ied):

smile --- smiled cook --- cooked study --- studied

Irregular verbs \ The form changes:

be \_\_\_ was / were

have .-- had

# Possessive

(Adjectives / Pronouns)

Subject pronouns		Possessive adjectives		Possessive pronouns	
	1	my	and the section of th	mine	ملكي
	He	his		his	ملكه
	She	her		hers	ملكها
	lt	its	>+ houn	•	ملگنا
	We	our		ours	ملکك - ملکتم
	You .	your		yours	للكمد
	They	their		theirs	-

# Plural



Nouns can be singular or plural.

# Rules for plural

9 9330 -	and the second second
Regular plural: We add (-s	
brother	sister
Nouns ending in (o, ch,	sh, s, x or z), we add (es).
the land	box boxes
buffalo buffaloes	watches
dish dishes	watch
Nouns ending in (a constitute).	onant + y), we remove the (y) and add
baby babies	city cities
Nouns ending in (a vow	rel + y), we add (s).
donkeys	boy boys
donkey	changes (There is no rule.)
1 trregular plural: The no	un changes. (The
mon	WOLLIGHT
=2000	child children
goose geese	foot
person people	
Some nouns don't ch	lange.
sheep sheep	deer deer
fish fish	Territ Terri

# Punctuation Marks



## Capital letters

- At the beginning of the sentence
- Names of people, countries, cities, months and days of the week
- Wael lives in Alexanoria in Egypt.



- \* At the end of the sentence
- I love my school.



## Question mark

- At the end of the question
- Do you like cooking, Mona?



- To divide items in a sentence
- I play football, tennis, and basketball.



# Exclamation mark

- To show strong feelings or emotions
- You are doing a great job!

# General Activities

# Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Tare Ada	at delege ex	v di	out different types	. We have to give of communication.	
Tare	What type a	re you studyin	g?		
Ada	I like readin	ing.	different topics, so		
Tare	l like 4)	. People	make some great	videas sametimes!	
2			roma b c ord .		
4	Yesterday, we			a French lesson.	
1.	a) has	had	having	d)have	
9	Last Sunday, I		a present	ation about reptiles.	
la r	a) makes		making	d)make	
3	Llike	. People	make some great	videos sometimes	-
0.		vlogs	poems	d)banks	
4.	"Men" is the plural	form of		- 12 - 14 m m m - 14 - 14	
	a) woman	man	child	person	
5.	Cairo is the			city in Egypt.	
	a) large	larger	largest	d)more large	
G.	The state of the s			are cold-blooded	
	a) Reptiles	Mammals	Birds	d)Cows	
7.	A jellyfish is a/an			TOTAL TREES HER	
	a) invertebrate	amphibian	vertebrate	d)birds	
8.	People who are		4.1	can't hear well.	
	a) deaf	blind	dumb	d)lame	
9.	Red and blue are		- American section	colors.	
	a) secondary	b) primary	first	disecond	4

- 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentencer.
- largest in the Egypt city is . .
- 2. solar energy will. Airplanes future the in use.
- talking recycling about today .
- eat our often bread with meals .
- the moment. doing\_ are\_ What\_ you\_ at\_?
  - 4 Complete the table.

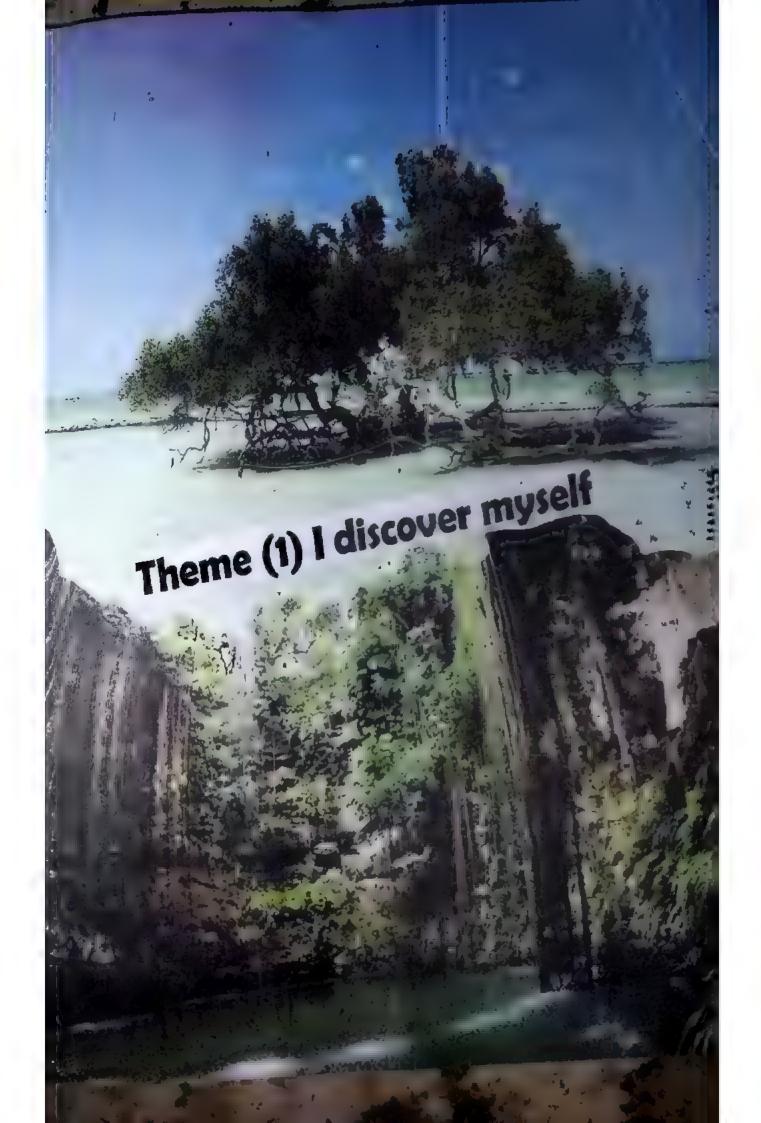
Singular	Plural	Singular	Piural
baby		tomato	
sheep	animan		geese
	children	Demonstration and	cities
man	Samuel Vie	woman	

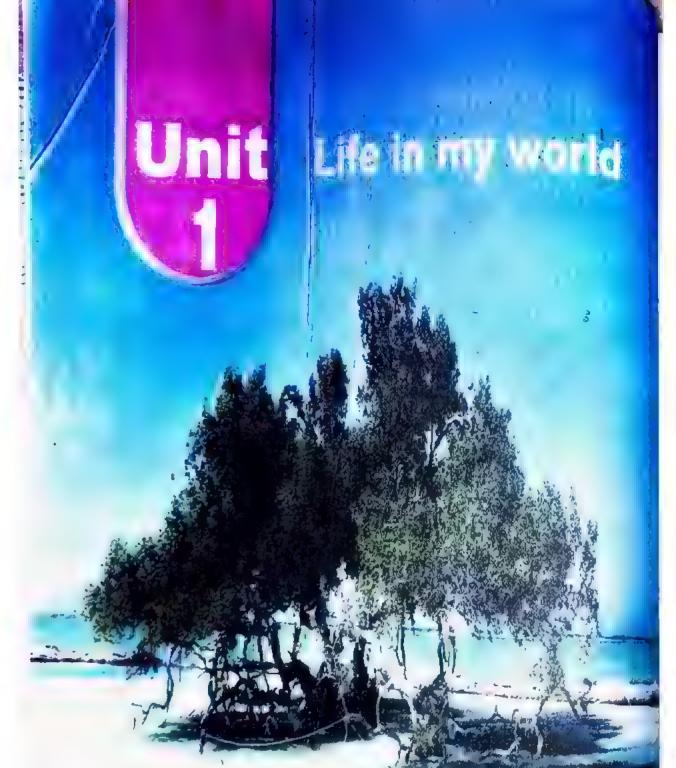
5 Punctuate the following.

the store sells clothes jewelry and bags

do fares and yasmine live in luxor

will you stay in amman when you visit jordan





Wadi el Gemal National Parki

understand a story about a visit to a

ecosystem

understand and use

read and understand a story about a

ecosystem.

listen to and understand an interview with a wildlife photographer

understand and use 🐫

to write about how to stay healthy.

read and understand a story about a grassland ecosystem. sevice and use 444, can might must, can t for predictions, offers,

possibility, and obligation.



# A GREAT TRIP!







forest







freshwater







grassland أرص عشبيه

## Extra vocabulary

storm	عاصفة	trip	
area	منطقة	South Sinai	قلم دان
thick	سميك	shallow	منوب سيناء محل (غيرعميق)
salt water	مياه مالحة	illnesses	
diseases	أمراض	community	ايراض
butterflies	فراشات	mangrove forests	<b>مجتمع</b> عابات المانجروف
species	أنواع / فصائل	soil	
roots	جذور	carbon dioxide	تر <b>بة</b> عنى اكسيد الكربون
Important		and propositions	ان احسید استرارت

#### tant expressions and prepositions

along the coast	بامتداد الساحل	interact with	پ <mark>نفاعل</mark> مخ
grow out of		high out of	ایسان سے اعلی من
safe home for		species of	الواع من
living things		NabqNational Park	حديقة ثبق الوطنية
non-living things		global warming	الاحتباس الحراري

## Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

	Present	Past	P.P
protect interact survive irregular vert	p يحمي ir بتفاعل S يبقى على قيد الحياة	rrived rotected nteracted	arrived protected interacted survived
fight grow	Present ایفاتل / پخارب / یتشاجر fo یمو پیمو		P.P fought grown

16 Unit (1) Life in my world

Help your child identify these words. منور ملفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

### \_\_\_. Lesson (1)

## $\Omega$ Listen and read.

# الم عندنا المدرسية إلى حديثه بيق الوطنية (هيه عثمان

Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 kilometers of mangrove forest, which is the largest in the Red Sea. We went there to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem.

من على طول الساحل هنا ، هناك كيلومتر من غابات على طول الساحل هنا ، هناك ٤٫٨ كيلومتر من غابات المنجروف بالنسمة

When we arrived at the beach, we saw trees growing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. When I touched the trees leaves, they felt very thick. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot.

حد، دجه بالمادة من ما الله عنده من محالا مكن بسر بعده السجار في المده المالحة ، الله عدم هذه المالحة عنده من عدم من عدم المالحة عنده المالحة المالح

We learned that mangrove trees help the environment in many ways. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem.



المنا ن اشحار المنحرة ف تساعد لبنية بطرق عديده. فشجار المنحروف تحمى الكانيات غير الحية ، ...... ذات الحية في النصام البيني النحري

When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand washing away. The forests are also a safe home for many animals.

ع. ١٠ كون هناك عواصف ، قبل حدورها العمياته ثميع الرمال ٢٠٠ الانجر ف. الغابات هي أيضا موطن امن

Help your child read about a visit to a marine ecosystem. ساعد طقلك أن يترا عن زيارة إلى نظام يبني بحري

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 17

Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects, and other animals live in the mangrove forests. We could see many little fish swimming in the shallow water among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish and other animals couldn't catch them. That is how mangrove trees help young fish survive.

بعد المناف الأنواع المختلفة من الأسماك والطبور والعشرات و لعبوانات الاخرى في عادت المنحوف بمكننا أن نرى العديد من الأسماك الصغيرة تسبح في المياه الصحية بين حدور الاشحار ، حبب لا يُستطبع السماك الكبيرة والحيوانات الأخرى صيدها. هذه هي الطريقة الى تساعد الها اشحار المنحروف الاسماك المغيرة على البقاء.

The leaves of the mangrove trees take four times more carbon dioxide from the air than other kinds of trees. Mangrove trees help us with global warming.

تأخذ أوراق أشجار المنحروف أربعة أصعاف ثاني أكسند الكربون من الهواء من النواع خرى من الأشعار، الساعدنا أشجار المنحروف في حالة الاحتباس الحراري.

We also saw small yellow flowers on the mangrove trees. There were a lot of bees and other insects on them. Bees make a special honey from the mangrove flowers. People say mangrove honey helps fight some illnesses and diseases.



وأيناً أيضا الزهور الصفراء الصغيرة على اشجار المنجروف. كان هدك لكثير من لنحل و الحبترات لاجرى عنها. نصنع النصل عسائد عسان المتحروف في مجارسة عنها. نصنع النحل عسالا خاصامان أزهار المتحروف. بقول الناس يساعد عسان المتحروف في مجارسة بعض الأمواض و الأسقام.

What I liked most about the mangroves was seeing all the different species making a community. The plants, animals, and insects all interact with each other to survive. I've never seen so many different species of butterflies! It was a great day.

أكثر ما أعجبي في أشجار المنجروف هو روية كل الأنواع المحترف التي تكفّ محيد. تتفاعل البدئات والعجبي في أشجار المنحروف هو روية على قيد الحياة، لم أر قط لكثير من لانواع المختلفه من والعيوانات والحشرات مع بعضها البعض للبقاء على قيد الحياة، لم أر قط لكثير من لانواع المختلفه من للنواطات مثل الذي رأيتها إلقد كارا دوما رائعا.

#### Listen and circle the correct and year from the con- Nabq National Park is in South d Port Said Alexandria b) Sinai a) London forest. 2 Along the coast here, there are 4.8 kilometres of mangrove mango b) apple a) orange ecosystem. Mangrove forests are so important for the .) forest b) freshwater --- desert a) marine water. Mangrove trees can grow in d) hot · c) fresh b) cold a) salt Read and complete the mislog wind the appeter the box. Hi Sara. Where did you go yesterday? 115 to Nabo National Park. I went on a school Where is Nabq National Park? 41 It is in South 2) M Why did you go there? To learn why mangrove forests are so important for the 31 ecosystem. What are some of the living things in a marine ecosystem?

Hundreds of different kinds of 4

insects and other animals.

. birds.

# 3 Chanse the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1,	The mangrove forest	is the · ·			in the Red .	1
	a) smallest	h) tallest	c)	CHOICOUL	(4) large	1
2	Mangrove trees are			for the	marine econ	
	a) bad	b) awful	c)	important	d) help <sub>iess</sub>	31
3.	Mangrove leaves are	e very · · · .				
	a) thin	b) thick	c)	slim	d) fat	
4.	Mangrove trees help	young fish to			tip o i project mile	
	a) eat	b) survive	c)	swim	d) sleep	
Ę	Bees make a specia	l		from the	mangrove flow	il.
	a) sugar	b) sugarcane	c)	honey		riq
e,	In an ecosystem, livi	ing things		with	h non-living thin	Ů.
	e) go	b) watch	c)	interact		Ψ'
7.	Animals and plants	are	47 (	tent of the street		J.
	a) living	b) non-living	c)	lively	d) lives	
(	and and and					e
	a) fresh	b) salt	c)	muddy	d) cold	
9.	Mangrove forests	*** 1 * 1)+1+ ()		the r	marine ecosyste	П
	a) kill	b) protect	c)	damage	d) destroy	
r	The leaves of mang other trees.	rove trees take n	nore	e	from the air th	ar
	a) carbon dioxide		c)	nitrogen	d) water	
71	. Mangrove honey he				and disease	á
	a) people		c)	plants	d) medicines	
4,7	The plants, animals,			with eac	ch other to survi	100
	a) interact	b) protect	c)	damage	d) save	

#### Lesson (1)

# 4 Order the words to make correct semences

- 1. trees survive mangrove fish young help -
- 2. plants the animals an
- 3. thick leaves are Mangrove very -

## 5 Read the following text and answer the questions

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as by as a forest. In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil. The different species in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to survive

#### A) Choose the correct answer from , , or

- 1. The main idea of the text is a/an
  - a) ecosystem b) lake
- c) sea
- a) river
- 2. Living things are things such as plants and
  - a) rocks
- b) soil
- c) water
- d) animals
- 3. The underlined word "big" is the opposite of
  - a) huge
- b) large
- c) small
- u) heavy

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- 4. What is an ecosystem?
- 5. Why do the different species in an ecosystem need each other?

## 6 Write a text of FRTV (30) words about

The mangrove to rests

#### Guiding elements:

( important - marine ecosystem - salt water - roots - thick )

Help your child deal with such questions.

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 21

Lesson (2)

## LANGUAGE

# Relative Clauses جيل الوصل

Usage

To describe a noun.

استدم اوصف ادعم

## who - which - where

We use "who" for people.

e.g. I have a frend who lives in the Sinai Peninsula.

e.g. We met a man who works in a garden.

بذي / لتى (لغير معاقل) النام (لغير معاقل)

We use "which" for things.

e.g. Malak has a book A sch is about plants in the Sinai Peninsula.

where: إلىكان) حيث اللمكان

We use "where" for places.

e.g. We learned a lot about the area where they live.

لاحظ:

افر**ق بين (**اسم المكان والاسم الغير عاقل)

اسم المكان: يعبر عن نشاط نقوم به داخل المكان،

مُن اللسم العبر عامل: لا يعبر عن نشاط نقوم به داخل المكان.

This is the shop where I buy my needs.

<sup>63</sup>(الشراء) بشاط يقوم به داخل الاعجل.

This is the shop which opens very early. المحل لنس نشاط نقوم به دادل المحل.

22 Unit (1) Life in my world

Help your child understand and use relative للمطفئك أن يقهم ويستخدم جدل الوصل، clauses.

# **General Activities**

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1	Do you remember m	y cousin Ali 🗸	lives in ti	Te Siriai Fermissia:
1	a) where		c) what	d) who
2	We learned a lot abo			they live.
See 1	a) whose		c) where	d) which
3	They live close to a		is	called Mount Sinai.
J.	a) who		c) where	d) when
4	I have another cousi			lives near a wadi.
7.		b) which	c) where	d) who
5.	A wadi is an ecosys	-	•	is normally dry.
		b) who	c) which	d) whose
6.	We met a man			works in a garden.
	a) who	b) whose	c) which	d) where
7.	I have a friend	•		lives in Alexandria.
	a) which	b) where	c) who.	d) when
8.	Cairo is the city			my uncle lives.
	a) which	b) when	c) who	d) where
9.	Mona always gives	us figs		are from her garden.
	a) whose	b) who	c) which	d) where
10	These are the boys		are v	ery good at science.
	a) which	b) where	c) who	
11	This is the store		you can buy s	ome sweet oranges.
	a) where	b) who	c) which	
12	This is a medicinal	plant	is g	ood for tired people.
	a) which	b) where	c) who	d) what

	Unit (1)
13 Do you know my aunt	lives in New York
a) which b) who	
14. I know a nice place	we can go for a hour
a) where b) whi	uli uli
Younis is a boy	wants to be a scientis
S WHICH B WIT	3 (:) WIICIC 131 MAG
Malak has a book is ab	out medicinal plants in the Sinai Peninsula
a) who b) wh	ere c) which d) when
Do you know the house	my grandparents live
a) that b) who	c) where d) which
o I have a friend	is very good at tennis,
	ich. c) when d) where
This is the house	I was born,
a) when b) wh	ere c) who , d) which
L. I have a sister	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · is very kind
a) which b) wh	c) where d) when
2 Read and complete with	the correct form.
This is my friend	(which) I love.
2. We met a boy	(where) lives in Cairo.
5. This is the mountain	( who ) is called Mount Sinal.
I have a son	(which) is very good at swimming.
5 She has a book	(where) is about marine ecosystem
6. This is the mall	(who) you can buy many things.
?. Sara is the girl	(which) wants to be a doctor.
8. This is the shop	(where) opens very early
24 Unit (1) Life in my world	Help your child deal with such questions. مثر طملك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسداد.



# A RAINFOREST **ECOSYSTEM**

Key vocabulary



Amazon rainforest canopy ,

مصلة عايات الإمارون المطيرة



wildlife

علوم بريد



a custard appe



photographer

مصور فويوعرا



exhibition

. . .

#### Conjugation of verbs

brequiar verbs

	Present	-	Past	PP
cut down		cut dov بفطع	vn	cut down
learn		learned يتعلم	i / learnt	learned / learnt
show	, يوضع	showe بين ا	d	shown



### **Main Points**

Malak Habib has been to the Amazon rainforest.

زارت منك حسيم، غربات الإسرون المطارة

2 The Ari azon rainforest is a very important ecosystem

تُعد غادت الاصوادي المصيرة نظاما بينيا هاما جدا

3 All the ...ving things in the rainforest need each other.

تعتاج جميع الكالدب الحية في الفاية المصارة إلى بعضها البعص

Oustard apple trees are important to the rainforest ecosystem because animals eat the fruit to survive.

فاكهة الكاساؤد الفيدية مهمه لينظام البين لأز الحيوارب والرامد من غير عبد احده

Sirds and animas take the trees seeds to other parts of the forest.

تنقل الطبور والجمواذات بدو الأسجار الي حزء أحرى من الدية

3 All the parts of the forest ecosystem interact.

أأعا حميع أجزاء البطام اسبى للعادس مع يعتمها ببعص

People are cutting down the trees so animals will lose their homes and food.

يقوم الناس يقطع الأشجار، لذلك سوف تعقد لحيوانات موضيا وصعب

# Parts of speech

### Noun

a word that is the name of a person, place, thing or idea.

🔪 Ahmed - Egypt - cat - goal - luck

## Adjective

a word that describes a noun.

🔪 happy - funny - beautiful - lucky

Adjective	الصفه	Abstract noun	السد مددي
beautiful	نميل	e beauty	حدال
patient	ښور	patience	عيناو
lucky	حظوظ	. luck	حط
successful	جاح .	success	• .

#### Study the following:

· I wanted to show people the Leadily of the Amazon rainforest.

You need to have a lot of patience.

Luck is also quite important.

He doesn't want to wait because he isn't a parent person.

They weren't Larry that day. They didn't see any wild animals.

Malak's exhibition was a great Succession

# Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

The Amazon rainfo	prest is a very im	portant	
y) system	h) ecosystem	c) style	d) rain
All the	thir	igs in the rainfore	est need each other
a) life	b) living	c) leave	d) non-living
Custard apple tree	es help many ani	mals	
) die	b) sleep	c) survive	d) grow
The animals take	the trees	to othe	r parts of the forest
a) leaves	b) stems	c) seeds	d) oil
2 Read and comp	olete the dialog	with the words in	ı tlie box.
photograp	her - do - Custar	rd appie - ecosys	tem- play
Student <b>Hello, c</b>	an I ask you a fe	w questions?	,
Malak : Yes, of	course.		
Student · What d	o <b>you</b> 1)	TO SIE TO BE THEF SEE ABSOLUTIONS	
lwalak limawi	ildlife 2)	. Hike to take ph	otos of the forests.
Student What's	the rainforest?		
	ery important 3)		p. 4
		rtant trees there?	
Malak 4)			trees.
3 Choose the co	rrect answer fre	oma, b, c, ord.	
Fares doesn't wa	nt to wait becaus	e he isn't a	person
patience	b) patient	c) success	d) beauty
People are cutting		r eleminational pay on the enter on	the trees
) in	b) on	c) down	d) at
28 Unit (1) Life in my wor	rld	Hala at the control	h mugetions

	Lesson (3)	- 1					1.5
3.	There is so much						zon rainforest.
٠.	a) beauty	<b>b</b> )	beautiful*	c)	000		successful
	My grandad does	-			to learn	abo	out computers.
4.	a) patience		patient	c)	beauty	d)	beautiful
5.	Malak's exhibition	wa	s a great				
	a) successful	b)	success				beautiful
6.	They weren't		, that da				y wild animals.
	a) luck	b)	lucky	c)	beauty		
7	I wanted to show	peo	ple the		of the	\ma	zon rainforest.
	a) success			c)	luck	d)	patience
8.	You need to have	a k	ot of		NO STEEL BOOK AND DO DE B		
	a) patience	<b>b</b> )	successful	c)	lucky	d)	patient
9	The Amazon rainf	ore	st is a very im	npor	tant		
	a) ecosystem	b)	river	c)	desert	d)	system
10.	The animals take	the	trees		to other	part	s of the forest.
	a) stems	b)	leaves	c)	roots	d)	seeds
4	4 Order the words to make correct sentences.						
1.	cut down - Pcop	ilja.	the rainfore	st	trees - in		
2.	important - very - Pro with a considerable a reis - ecosystem .						
3.	is - Luck - important - also - quite						
4.	a - is - success - exhibition - roun - great						
5.	to - You ; have	- 1	need - patier	nce	- a lot of		

#### **S** Read the following text and answer the questions.

Malak is a wildlife photographer. She has been to the Amazon rainforest. She wanted to learn more about the Amazon rainforst, because a lot of people are cutting down the trees.

The Amazon rainforst is a very important ecosystem. All the living things in the rainforest need each other. Custard apple trees help many animals survive. The animals take the trees seeds to other parts of the forest. Malak wanted to show people how all the parts of the forest ecosystem interact.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Malak is a wildlife
  - a) engineer b) photographer c) researcher d) teacher
- 2. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to
  - a) Malak b) Malek c) Sara d) Mona
- 3. The main idea of the text is the Amazon
  - a) River b) rainforest c) company d) animals
- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. Why did Malak want to learn more about the Amazon rainforest?
- 5. What did Malak want to show people?
  - 6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The Amazon rainforest

#### Guiding elements:

( important - ecosystem - living things - Custard apple trees - trees seeds - interact )

# Lesson (4)

# STORY: IN THE MANGROVE TREE

## Co Listen and repeat.









augeng

kingfisher

pollen

worm

وم (حیوان تدبی مایی)

#### \* Definitions

You feel unhappy because you're thinking about problems or things that could happen.

surprise. Something happens and you didn't think it would happen

confused. You find it difficult to understand something.

#### Conjugation of verbs

	Present	Pa	ıst	P.P	
fiy	**	flew بط		flown	
sit	والمالية	يم sat		sat	
come out	٠ ٢٥ ټ	🤏 came ou	t	come out	
hear	2.2	- heard		heard	
bring	فنر	brought		brought	

Help your child identify these words.

ساهد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكدات

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 31

# Read and listen to the story. In the mangrove tree

في شحرة المنجروف

A kingtisher was visiting her old friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree. She flew down and sat next to the lizard. "You look sad," said the kingfisher to the lizard. "What's the matter?"



كَنْ مَنْ ١٠١٠ فِ بَرُورَ صَدِيقَتَهُ القديمَةِ، السَّحِلَيَةِ، فِي شَجِرةَ المَنْحُرُوفَ، طَارَ إِلَى أَسَفَلُ وَحَلْسُ بَحَنْبُ لَنَّامِ وَقَالُ طَائِرَ الرَّفْرَافُ لَلسَّحِلِيَةَ "أَنْتِ تَبِدِينُ حَزِينَةً" . وَسَأَلُهَا "مَا الأَمْرِ؟".

"People came and cut down some trees. The trees protected the worms and the fish we eat, but now it's difficult to find food." "Oh no!" said the kinglisher looking worked. "I'm hungay." Suddenly



kingfisher, looking worried. "I'm hungry." Suddenly, a dugong came up out of the sea.

ق المحمد "حاء المس و قطعوا بعض الأشحار. الأشجار تحمى الديدان والأسماك التي بأكلها ، ولكن الاسمال التي بأكلها ، ولكن الاسمال التي بأكلها ، ولكن الاسمال العنور على الطعام." قال طائر الرفراف "أوه لاا" ، وكان ببدو قلقا، "أنا جائع." فحاة ، خرج حيوان الاطوم من البحر.

"Hello Dugong!" said the lizard, surprised. "Hello Lizard. Hello Kingfisher. I have some bad news," said the dugong. "What is it? Are the people back again?" asked the kingfisher. "Yes, they are. Can't you hear them?" replied the dugong.

قالب السحلية بالدهاش "مرحيا، أنها الاطوم!" قال حيوان الأصوم "مرحيا أينها السحلية. مرحيا طاير الرفر في لذي بعض الأخيار السيئة لم سأله طائر الثقاف "ما هي هذه الأحدر؟ هي عاد الناس مرة أخرى؟" قال الأطوم "تعمم ألا يمكنك أن تسمعهم؟" .

The lizard and the kingfisher listened carefully. They heard trucks and people shouting. "Oh no. How many more mangrove trees are they going to cut down?" cried the lizard.

استمعت كلًا من السحلية والرفراف بعناية. سمعوا الشاحنات والناسُ يصرخون. بكت السحنية قائلة "أوه لا كم عدد أشجار المنجروف التي سيقومون بقطعها؟".

#### Lesson (4)

At that moment, the animals heard a buzzing sound. There were three bees buzzing around the tree. One of the bees flew close to the other animals and said,"The people are not going to cut down more trees.



في ثبك المعطقة ، سمعت الحيوانات صوب طنين. كان هناك ثلاثة تحلات تطنّ حول الشجرة, طارت إحدى اسحلات بالقرب من الحيوانات الأخرى وقالت: "لن نقطع الناس المزيد من الأشجار.

They are going to plant other mangrove trees. They understand that they made a mistake. They have learned that the mangrove trees are important, so they're planting new ones. They brought us here to help the trees grow."

سوف بررعون أشجار المنجروف الأخرى. إنهم يفهمون انهم ارتكبوا حطاً. لقد تعلموا أن أشجار المنجروف مهمة ، لذا فهم يررعون اشجارا جديدة. لقد أحضرونا إلى هذ لمساعدة الأشجار على النمو."

"How will you help the trees grow?" asked the dugong, confused. "We carry pollen from one plant or tree to another and that helps them to make seeds," explained the bee.

سال الاطود في حبرة "كيف سنساعدون الاشجار على النمو؟"، اوضحت النحلة قائله "نحمل حبوب النقاح من نبات أو شجرة إلى أخرى وهذا بساعدهم على صنع البذور".

"So, is life going to get better here?" asked the kingfisher. "Yes, it is," replied the bee, smiling. "Good!" said the lizard and the kingfisher together. "We're hungry!"

سال طاير الرفر ف "إذ، هل سيسير الحدة بشكل أفضل هنا؟". أجابت النحلة منتسمة "نعم، ستكون جيدة!" قال السحلية وطائر الرفراف معا. "نحن جانعان!"

# General Activities

THE RESERVE	About a fact of reported	ower from a, b,	c, or	d
1 Listen and circ	le the correct an	2McI II on 1		
I. A was a) dugong	visiting her old fr b) worm	iend, the lizard, i c) kingfisher		2.016 LF
2. The lizard looked a) sad	b) happy	c) ugly	d)	exited some trees
<ul><li>a) planted</li><li>4. It's difficult for the</li></ul>	b) watered	c) grew	d)	cut down to find food
' a) lizard	p) crow	c) snake	d)	dugong
2 Choose the co	orrect answer fro	om a, v, c, or a.	the	animals food
a) damage 2. The animals car		c) destroy	d)	kill to eat
a) trees	b) <b>food</b>	c) water		juice feel unhappy
		c) Hungry s and you didn't th		
<ul><li>a) Bored</li><li>5. People came ar</li></ul>		c) Thirsty	d)	Hungry some tress
<ul><li>a) turned on</li><li>6. The kingfisher i</li></ul>		c) turned off		flew
a) worry 7. There were thin	38	c) worried		worrying buzzin
a) birds	b) animals	c) Worms	d)	bees

### all the following text and answer the questions.

The kingfisher visited her friend, the lizard, in a mangrove tree. The lizard was sad. Site explained that when the people came to the mangrove forest, they cut down the trees. After that, it was difficult for the lizard to find food to eat. Dugong told his friends the kingfisher and the lizard that the people were back. They could hear trucks and people shouting. The animals were worried. Then they heard some bees buzzing around the tree. A bee told the animals what was happening. The people learned that the trees were important, and that they were part of the ecosystem.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a b cor d

- The lizard was
  - happy
- excited
- sad
- surprised

The animals could

trucks and people shouting.

- listen
- b) watch
- see
- d) hear

- The underlined word "She" refers to the
  - kingfisher by lizard
- a) dugong

#### B) Answer the following questions

- 4. Where does the lizard live?
- 5. Why was it difficult for the lizard to find food?

## Order the words to make correct sentences.

- The dugong that are the people
- you the trees How help will
- 3 came down People and trees some -
- Mangrove Dart the ecosystem are trees of

# Lesson (5)

## I HAVE A HEALTHY HEART

الدرور المراور

שב י עינק

-UA

2 لغ (واشد)

اذبة

#### Key vocabulary

blood ننب blood

arteries شرایین circulatory system

veins اردة carbon dioxide

Extra vocabulary

new born اکسجین

air مواء adult .

healthy انبشر healthy

regularly ضوء الشمس ' regularly

nutrients معادن

#### Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	P.P

carry carried carried

moved يتحرك moved

cycled cycled cycled

exercised يتمرن exercised exercised

relax · يستريح relaxed relaxed

Irregular verbs

Present P.P

beat يثيض beat beaten keep

keep veried also kept kept kept

36 Unit (1) Life in my world

Help your child identify these words. الله الله يتمرف على هذه الكلمات.

#### Lesson (5) ----

## Important expressions and prepositions

similar to move to مشابه ل think about good for بفكر ق instead of protect from دلا من get sick ?... How often بمرض (بصاب بمرض) about 100,000 times

work harder حوالي ١٠٠٠ مرة

#### D Look and read.

## Are plants similar to humans,

هن السابات تشبه البشراء

ينتقل إلى

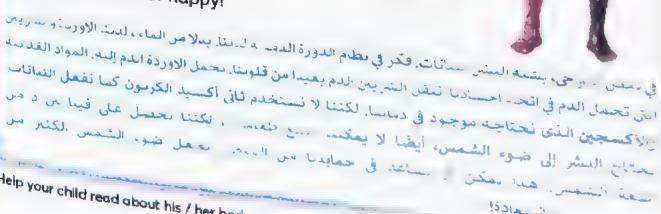
مفيدي

- 200

1, 2,205

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick. Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy!



Help your child read about his / her body

#### Read and learn.

Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heartwork harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.



لبلاً المرادات و را 100 المان مراه في البوم! لذلك من المهم الحفاظ على صحة قديت عندما بمسى و تحرى الدراجة فهذا بجعل الفنت تعسل تحهد اكبر إردا تدريت بأنتظام فهذا يحمل قليك يعمل عكل قصل حيث بمكتاب لحسول على المعادن والمدايير الفذاتية والاكسجين بطريقة أكثر شهولة

#### . Read this information about the heart

Your heart beats about 70 times a minute.

ينيض قليك حوالي 70 مرة في الدقيقة.

2 The heart moves blood around your body.

حرك القلب الدم حول جسمك

6 A new born baby's heart beats faster than adults' heart.

قلب المولود الجديد يتبض أسرع من قلب البالغين

Veins carry blood to the heart.

الأوردة تحمل الدم إي القلب

## HOW TO KILP YOUR DEART HEAT IN

- Eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables and 115h
- Play sportswith your friends. Exercise regularly in the gym or outside.
- 1 Keep moving. Walk, run, swim or ride your sike
- Take some time to relaxand be quiet.

## **General Activities**

1	Listen and circle t	ne correct a		
E .	Eat healthy food like fr	uit, vegetabl	es and	
1.		burger	c) cake	d) fish
0	a) pasta		•	with your friends.
2.	Play b)	cards	c) chess	d) games
	a) sports b) Keep moving. Walk, ru			
3.		donkey	c) bike	d) scooter
	44	COTINGY	<b>o</b> , <b>oo</b>	and be quiet.
4.	Take some time to	relax	c) sleep	d) run
	(i) III			
2	Read and complete	e the text w	ith the words in	the box.
	overcis	e – ovvden –	beats - heart -	nose
	exercis	or onygen		
	Your heart 1)		over 100,0	00 times a day! So it's
	TOUT HOURT			
	portant to keep your he	eart healthy.		run, swim, or cycle,
you	oortant to keep your he		When you walk,	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you
yo( 3)	portant to keep your he u make your 2)	regularly, yo	When you walk, our heart works t	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you better and you can get
yo( 3)	oortant to keep your he	regularly, yo	When you walk, our heart works t	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you
you 3) the	oortant to keep your he u make your 2) e minerals, nutrients, ar	regularly, yo	When you walk, our heart works I	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you better and you can get you need more easily.
you 3) the	oortant to keep your he u make your 2) e minerals, nutrients, ar Choose the correct	regularly, yound 4)	When you walk, our heart works to	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you better and you can get you need more easily.
you 3) the	oortant to keep your he u make your 2) e minerals, nutrients, ar	regularly, yound 4)	When you walk, our heart works to om a, b, c, or c	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you better and you can get you need more easily.
you 3) the	oortant to keep your he u make your 2) e minerals, nutrients, ar Choose the correct	regularly, yound 4) ct answer frour bodies in	When you walk, our heart works I	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you better and you can get you need more easily.
you 3) the	contant to keep your her make your 2)  minerals, nutrients, are choose the correct Blood travels around a) veins and arteries	regularly, yound 4) ct answer frour bodies in	when you walk, our heart works I om a, b, c, or c n our les c) bor	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you better and you can get you need more easily.
you 3) the	contant to keep your her make your 2)  minerals, nutrients, are choose the correct Blood travels around a) veins and arteries	regularly, yound 4) ct answer frour bodies in	om a, b, c, or on our les c) bor move blood	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you better and you can get you need more easily.  des distances to tendons disway from our heart.
you 3) the	contant to keep your her make your 2)  minerals, nutrients, are choose the correct Blood travels around a) veins and arteries a)  Bones	regularly, yound 4) ct answer frour bodies in b) musci	when you walk, our heart works it om a, b, c, or c n our les c) bor move blood nents c) Vei	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you better and you can get you need more easily.  des distances to tendons disway from our heart.
you 3) the	contant to keep your her make your 2)  minerals, nutrients, are choose the correct Blood travels around a) veins and arteries a)  Bones	regularly, yound 4) ct answer frour bodies in b) musci	when you walk, our heart works it om a, b, c, or c n our les c) bor move blood nents c) Vei	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you better and you can get you need more easily.  des d) tendons d away from our heart. ins d) Arteries
you 3) the	contant to keep your her make your 2)  minerals, nutrients, are choose the correct Blood travels around a) veins and arteries a) Bones  a) Veins	regularly, yound 4) ct answer frour bodies in b) musci	when you walk, our heart works it om a, b, c, or c n our les c) bor move blood nents c) Vei	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you better and you can get you need more easily.  des d) tendons d away from our heart. ins d) Arteries arry blood to our heart.
you 3) the	contant to keep your her make your 2)  minerals, nutrients, and choose the correct Blood travels around a) veins and arteries a)  Bones  a) Veins	regularly, yound 4) ct answer frour bodies in b) muscib) Ligan b) Finge	when you walk, our heart works it om a, b, c, or c n our les c) bor move blood nents c) Vei ca	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you better and you can get you need more easily.  des d) tendons d away from our heart. ins d) Arteries arry blood to our heart. eries d) Toes
you 3) the 1. 2. 3	contant to keep your her make your 2)  minerals, nutrients, and Choose the correct Blood travels around a) veins and arteries a) Bones  a) Veins Blood carries a) oxygen and nutrient	regularly, yound 4)  ct answer frour bodies in b) muscing b) Ligarron b) Finge	when you walk, our heart works it om a, b, c, or c n our les c) bor move blood nents c) Vei ca	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you better and you can get you need more easily.  des d) tendons d away from our heart. ins d) Arteries arry blood to our heart. eries d) Toes around our bodies.
you 3) the 1. 2. 3	contant to keep your her make your 2)  minerals, nutrients, and choose the correct Blood travels around a) veins and arteries a) Bones  a) Veins Blood carries	regularly, yound 4)  ct answer frour bodies in b) muscing b) Ligarron b) Finge	When you walk, our heart works I om a, b, c, or c n our les c) bor move blood nents c) Vei ca ors c) Art	run, swim, or cycle, work harder. If you better and you can get you need more easily.  d.  des d) tendons d away from our heart. ins d) Arteries arry blood to our heart. eries d) Toes around our bodies. rogen d) hydrogen



#### Read the following text and answer the questions.

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry blood around our bodies. Arteries move blood away from our heart. Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and oxygen that we need are in our blood. But we don't use carbon dioxide like plants do.

Humans need sunlight, too. We can't make our own food, but we get vitamin D from sunlight. This can help protect us from getting sick Sunlight also makes a lot of people feel happy!

A) Choose the	correct answer	froma,b,c ord
---------------	----------------	---------------

1.	Our arteries ca	arry		away from our heart.
	a) food	b) water	c) blood	d) oxygen
2.	We get vitamin	D from		u/ oxygon
	a) plant	b) soil	c) sunlight	d) water
3.	The underlined	word "sick" means		a) water
	a) healthy	b) ill	c) fine	d) nice
B)	Answer the fol	lowing questions.		<b>4</b> , 1.00

- 4. What's the main idea of text?
- 5. How does blood move to your heart?
- 5 Order the words to make correct sentences.
- play I with sports my friends .
- a minute about Your beats 70 times heart .
- Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

How to keep your heart healthy

**Guiding elements:** 

( healthy food - sports - exercise - relax )

# Lesson (6)

# WRITING: LINKING WORDS

## Read the following text.

Seleem is a healthy boy. He loves sports. He plays tennis, football, and basketball. He eats healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. He doesn't eat a lot of chocolate because he knows that this food isn't very healthy. In the evening, he wants to relax, so he reads a book.



سمب ولد بصحه جيدد. يحب لرياضة. بلعب النئس وكرة القدم وكرة السلة. يأكل طعاما صحيا مثل مد كيت رحصروات والارز. لا باكن الكثير من الشوكولاتة لأنه يعلم أن هذا الطعام لبس صحيا جدا. في لمساء ، يريد الاسترحاء ، لذلك يقرأ كتابا.

"I do a lot of exercise because it's good for me," says Seleem. "Your heart is very important so you have to keep it healthy." Seleem is right. It's important to do exercise.

بعوب سبيم اقوم ما كثير من التسارين لالها جيدة بالنسبة لي". "قلبك مهم جدا لذا عليك أن تحافظ عليه بصحة جيدة."سليم على حق. قمن المهم ممارسة التدريبات الرياضية.

He has a healthy family, too. His sister Amira plays tennis and his sister Dina plays football. His mom walks to work and his dad rides his bike, but they don't play sports. His sisters like to listen to music to relax. It's important for our hearts to relax, too.

لديه عائلة سميع بصحه بضر أحنه أميره للعب التنس وشقيقته دينا تلعب كرة القدم. نمشى والدته إلى بعد ل وبركب والددد حنه مكنهم لا بمارسون الرياضة. تحب أخواته الاستماع إلى الموسيفي للاسترخاء من المهم أن تسترخي قلوبنا أيضا

## Linking words

Linking words are words that join words or sentences together.

#### and

- To link different things in a list
- Fish, chicken, and beans are all healthy food.
  - To link two similar sentences
- We went to the beach and we swam in the sea.

### but

To show a contrast

- He is weak, but works for 8 hours a day.
  - To link a positive and a negative sentence
- He is rich, but he doesn't help the poor.

#### because

- To show a reason for something
- Nadine goes to the pool because she likes swimming.

SO

To show the result of something

- Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, so she does exercise.
- 1 15 42 Unit (1) Life in my world

لراا

لبنان ر

## **General Activities**

Alı

## Read and complete the dialog will Universe in the so-

Hello, Seleem. Where are you going?

volleyball - and - sports center - Fridays - but

Seleem I'm g	oing to the	because it's ba	SKEIDAII CIUD IOUAY.		
_	ere a 2)	club at	the sports center?		
Seleem : Yes.	lt's on 3)				
Ali Is the	ere a tennis club?				
	here isn't. I play vol	lleyball -	football.		
2 Choose the	correct answes fr	oma, b, c, o,			
Nadine goes to	the pool		she likes swimming.		
a) hecause	. 1	c) but the morning,	d) and she goes		
to bed early.  a) but	b) and	c) because	d) 50		
Last weekend	we went to the bear	ch	we swam in the sea.		
a) and	b) so	c) but	d) because		
Hany likes to p	lay basketball,	he doesn'	t like to play football.		
a) so	b) because	c) and	d) but		
5. Fish, chicken,		beans	are all healthy food.		
a) and	b) but	c) because	d) so		
Wael likes fish, he doesn't like lamb.					
a) because		c) but	d) and		
	s, pomegranates,		figs.		
a) so	b) because	c) and	d) but		
8 I went to the lit		4 5	I needed a book.		
a) but	b) and	u).because	(I) SO		

9.	Lara wants to keep her heart healthy,			she	does exercise,		
	a) because	b)	so	c)	and	d)	but
10.	Walid and Shady	wen	t to the park			they	played tennis.
	a) so	b)	but	c)	because	d)	and
11.	I'm going to the sp	port	s center	ŕ	it's l	oasket	ball club today,
	a) because	-		c)	SO	d)	but
12.	I don't play baske	tbal	l,			- 1	play volleyball
	a) and		but	c)	because	d)	SO
13.	Lara plays tennis			she wants to be health			s to be healthy
	a) but	b)	SO	c)	and	d)	because
3	Read and com	plet	e with the o	orre	ect form.		
1.	Tarek plays footba	H		(	and he do	esn't p	lay basketball.
2. \	Ne eat a lot of frui	t		. (50) it is healthy			
3. 1	Naglaa goes to the	sp	orts center	fand) she doesn't go to the gym			
4. 1	We eat fish			(httl) we eat fresh vegetables, too			egetables, too.
<b>5</b> . i	want to be healthy	ſ		٠,	Hise) I don't	eat ca	ndy and cakes.
4	Write a text of		( ) wo	rds	about:		
			How to kee	phe	ealthy		
Gui	ding elements:						
	( healthy - sports - exercise - fruit - vegetables - tennis )						

## Losteren (7)

# STORY: WAITING FOR THE RAIN

#### Vocabulary

rain مطر cub sunshine مطر lovely بحديل warm . hard happily

## Important expressions and prepositions

hot day

lay in

move to

rain falling

بم حار

start to

wake up

wake up

run away

move through

## Modal verbs

التبيؤ For prediction will We will be hungry. For request and permission can Can we catch a rabbit to eat? For possibilities might Some rabbits might be dead. For impossibility and disability 1 . 11.11 can't Without rain, the grass can t grow For obligation الإلزام must We must wait for rain.

## Tisten to and read the story

#### في انتظار العطر Waiting for the rain

It was another long, hot day in the grassland. Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine. But his mother looked womed.



كان يوم احر طويلاوحار في الأراضي العشبية كان السمل مع أماه، وكان يرفد في صوء الشمس معن والمنه بدت قلقة.

"I hope it rains soon," she said. "Why do you want it to rain?" asked Cub. "It's lovely and warm. Wecan play in the sunshine." "If it doesn't rain, the grass. won't grow. Then we will be hungry," she answered. Cub started to laugh. "What do you mean? We eat meat, not grass!"

قالت: أمن الانمصر قربيا". سال الشيل لماد تريدين أن تمطر؟" "إنه يوم حشيل ود ق. يمكمنا اللعب تحس أشعة الشمس، أجابت الأم"إذا لم تمطر، فلن بنمو العشب، ثم سنكون جائعين". بدأ الشمل يضحك. "ماذا تقصدي؟ نحن نأكل اللحم وليس العشب!"

He ran away to play with his brothers and sisters, but his mother looked at the sky and worried. Two weeks later, it was still hot, and the ground was hard. There was no rain, and the plants were brown. Now, Cub had a strange feeling in his stornach: hunger. Can we catch a rabbit to eat?" he asked his mother. "lcan't find any rabbits," she said sadly.

جرى الشيل بعبدا لنعب مع إحونه و حواته، لكن و لدته نظرت إلى السماء وقلقت. بعد أسبوعين ، كان الجو لا يزال حارًا، وكانت الأرض صلبة. لم يكن هناك مطوء وكانت النباتات بنبة. الآن، كان لدى لنسس شعور عريب في معدرات الله الحوع. سأل والدته "هل بمكننا اصطباد ارنب لتناول الطعام؟" قالت بحزن" لا يمكنني العنور على أي أرانب".

"Some rabbits have gone to other places. Some rabbitsmight be dead." "Why?" asked Cub. "Because there isn't any rain. Without rain, the grasscan't grow. If the grass doesn't grow, the rabbits don't have any food." "Then we don't have any food!" answered Cub. Now he understood.

"نهبت بعض الأرانب إلى أماكن أحرى قد بكون بعص الارانب ميسة،" سنال الشبل"لماذا؟" "لأنه لا يوجد أي مطر بدق المصر، لا يمكن للعسب أن بنمو. اذ لم بنمو لعشب، فلن بكون للأرانب أي طعام. أجاب الشيل"إذا

wave child listen to and read the story.

#### Lesson (7)

"What can we do?" "We must wait for rain. If it doesn't rain, we must move to a different place." "So let's go! We card stay here without food!" said Cub, who was very worried now.

"ماذا بمكننا ال بمعل؟". "بعب أن ننبطر المصر. اذا لم بمطر ، يحب أن ننتقل إلى مكان محتيف." قال الشيل السيل المدي كان فيما للغاية الأن."لذلت هيا نوحل! لا يمكننا البقاء هنا بدون طعام!".

His mother smelled the air. She saw a thin gray cloud start to move through the blue sky. "Let's wait one more day," she said. Cub went to bed hungry, but in the morning, he woke up to hear rain falling on the ground.

كانت والدنه تشم رائحة الهواء. رأت سحابة رمادية رقيقة تبدأ في التحرك عبر السماء الزرقاء. قالت: " دعونا ننظر عوم "حر" دهب الشبل إلى العراش جانعا ، ولكن في الصباح ، استيقظ لسماع المطر يسقط على الأرض.

He ran outside with his brothers and sisters, and they played in the cool water. Mother lion smiled. "Do you like the rain now, Cub?" she asked. "Yes, I do! Now the grass will grow, the rabbits will come back, and we won't be hungry anymore!" said Cub, happily.

كص في الحارج مع حوله وحوته، وبعنوا في لماء لبارد. ابنسمت الام وفالت هل تحب المطر الان, أيها الشيل؟" قال الشيل بسعادة. "نعم! الآن العشب سوف ينمو، والأرانب ستعود، لن نجوع بعد الآن!



Help your child listen to and read the story. سامد طفقته أن يستمع وبقرا فقصة.

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 47

## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1.	It was another lon-	g	, (	day in the grassland
	a) cool	b) cold	c) hot	d) sunny
2.	* * * * 1	penns) courseled # 144 #180004###		was with his mother
	a) Lion	b) Cub	c) .Cap	d) Cup
3.	Cub lay in the			** * *
	a) road	b) street	c) house	d) sunshine
4.	The mother lion le			
	a) worried			
2	Choose the co	rrect answer fr	om a, b, c, or d	
1.	If it doesn't rain,	the grass won't	:: ****************************	
	a) grow	b) sleep	c) eat	d) run
2.	It's hot and there	e isn't any		.,,
	a) desert	b) air	c) rain	d) flowers
3.	He is		. He w	ants something to ea
	a) thirsty	b) hungry	c) hot	d) cold
4.	She heard the ra	ain		**
	a) swimming	b) running	c) turning	d) falling
5.				be hungr
	a) will	b) can	c) can't	d) might
6.	When it doesn't	rain, the grass	*****	gro\
	a) might	b) won't	c) can	d) wouldn't
7.	There are cloud	ls in the sky. It		rain soo
•	a) must	b) should	c) will	, d) shouldn't
8	Cub	•	· · · · slee	ep because he's hung
	a) can	b) will	c) can't	d) isn't
9				ve catch a rabbit to e
	a) Are	b) Can		d) Has

#### Lesson (7)



It was another long, hot day in the grassland. Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine. But his mother looked worried because there wasn't rain. She hoped it would rain soon. If it doesn't rain, the grass won't grow. Then they will be hungry. If the grass doesn't grow, the rabbits don't have any food. But it rained and Cub was happy again.

Al	Choose	the correct	answer	trom	a, b,	C or	d
----	--------	-------------	--------	------	-------	------	---

1.	It was not in the		**	w 19	
	a) grassland	b) club	c)	hotel	d) tent

2. .....lion hoped it would rain soon

- a) Father b) Sister c) Brother d) Mother
- 3. The underlined word "he" refers to
  - a) mother b) cub c) rabbit d) sky
- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. How did Mother feel at the start of the story?
- 5. What will happen if it doesn't rain?

#### Order the words to make correct sentences.

#### 5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Grassland ecosystem

#### **Guiding elements:**

n.

ryi

at?

( hot - live - animals - rain - grass - food )

## **Writing Corner**

### Ecosystem

An ecosystem is all the animals and plants in an area. The ecosystem can be as small as a pond or as big as a forest.

In an ecosystem, living things such as plants and animals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks, and soil. The different species in an ecosystem make a community, and they all need each other to survive.

### A healthy heart

Your heart beats over 100,000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exercise regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.

## How to stay healthy

Health is very important. I love sports. I play tennis, football, and basketball. I eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables, and rice. I don't eat a lot of chocolate because I know it isn't very healthy. In the evening, I want to relax, so I read a book.

## Review on Unit (1)

#### Ecosystems

grassland
rainforest
freshwater
living things
non-living things
Amazon rainforest

animals العراعي / ارض عشبية species غابة مطيرة soil عذب soil كثنات حية thick كننات غير حية

community غابات الزمازون المطيرة

مرته زراعية سميك مظالة

ميحتم

2-

water to the

للمنطق وأمل

#### Animals

dugong kingfisher lizard

worm حيوان الأطوم cub طائر الرفراف

buzzing bees سحلية

#### The heart

arteries veins carbon dioxide

oxygen حرایش beat نانی ،کسید الکریز blood ثانی ،کسید الکریز

#### Others

salt water
mangrove tree
custard apple tree
medicinal plant
survive

wadi illnesses diseases نادیک interact پیرایینی میں ایک

**Abstract Noun** 

### Adjective

beautiful
patient
lucky
successful

patience محطوط المحطوط العدد العدد

ALBAUE.

Help your child revise unit (1).

### Relative Clauses

who

for people لدې ادنۍ الماني

e.g. We met a man works in a garden.

tehich الذي / التي العبر تعافي for things

e.g. A wadi is an ecosystem and the is normally dry.

عدث (ليكان) trhere

forplaces

e.g. We learned a lot about the area andre they live.

## Linking Words

### and

. We went to the beach and we swam in the sea.

### but

Hany likes basketball, but he doesn't like football.

## because

Nadine goes to the pool because she loves to swim.

SO

Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, so she does exercise.

## Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1) Lesson (3) فاثهة الكاسترد مصنة غايات الأمارون المصيرة Lesson (4) ...... طاثر الرفراف .... الأصوم (حبوان تديي ماني) Lesson (5) شرايس اوردة Lesson (7)

## Activities On Unit (1)

الستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

<ol> <li>Your heart</li> <li>a) beats</li> <li>b) moves</li> <li>It's important to keep your heart</li> </ol>	over 100,000 times a day runs d) swims
	c) brain d) stomach
a) sleep b) exercise  2 Read and complete the test w	regularly, your heart works bette  a) play video games (i) watch T  the words in the box

elies - biodoj - dxygen - darbon dloxide - water

In some ways, humans are similar to plants. Think about our circulatory system. Instead of water, our veins and arteries carry around our bodies. 2 move blood away from our heart.

Veins carry blood to it. The nutrients and that we need are in our blood. But we don't use 4 like plants do.

# 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hundreds of different kinds of fish, birds, insects, and other animals live in the mangrove forests. We could see many little fish swimming in the shallow water among the roots of the trees, where bigger fish and other animals couldn't catch them. That is how mangrove trees help young fish dioxide from the air than other kinds of trees take four times more carbon global warming. We also saw small yellow flowers on the mangrove trees help us with There are a lot of bees and other insects on them. Bees make a special

### Activities on Unit (1)

- A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
- 1. The mangrove trees help young fish
  - a) die
- b) destroy
- c) survive
- d, damage

- The main idea of the text is the
  - a) oxygen
- b) fish c) mangrove trees () butterflies
- 3. Bees are a kind of
  - a) birds
- b) fish c) insects
- d) mammals

- b) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What kinds of living things live in the mangrove forests?
- 5. What do bees make from mangrove flowers?

### 4) The Reader

- Read and write T (True) or F (False).
- Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.
- Jubari wasn't very brave.
- 3. Jubari is a dorcas gazelle.
- Donga is Jubari's mother.
  - Complete the following sentences.
- 1. Subira showed Jubari where to rest on
- 2. Jubari and Subira's favorite food was desert

days.

## **5**) Choose the correct answer from **a**, **b**, **c**, or **d**.

1. I want to be healthy I don't eat chocolate. a) because b) so c) but d) or This is the boy .... has a cough. a) who b) which c) when d) where 3. This is a place .it sometimes snows. a) what b) who c) where d) when 4. A wadi is an ecosystem .. is normally dry. a) who b) which c) when d) where 5. Hany likes basketball ... . he doesn't like tennis. a) or b) and c) so d) but 6. She goes to the pool she likes swimming. a) but b) because c) and

## 6 > Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1. lives What in forests mangrove ?
- 2. likes but Wael doesn't like fish, lamb he .
- 3. fruit Seleem food eats healthy like .

## Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Ecosystems** 

### Guiding elements:

( kinds - living - non-living - each other - interact )

d) so

# Unit Look around you Kil cenote, a cave in Mexico In this unit, the students will ... · learn words connected to geography, geology, and extreme weather read and understand two articles about places in Africa review the past simple and learn to use the present perfect · listen and understand people talking about important geographical features understand a story about a storm-chaser find out about volcances on the island of Java Write a description of an unusual geological formation and learn how to ntroduce a topic understand a story about a balloon ride

# Key vocabulary

erode

wetlands

wonders

dunes

wonders

canyon

valley

LIC!

## Natural Wonders

Mount Kilimanjaro

Victoria Falls

the Sahara Desert

Ngorongoro Crater

الان المعاملات المعامل

## Extra vocabulary

moustain	bı جبن	uffalos	جاموس
ecosystem	lal النظام بيبي	ke	§im
leopard	w gr	asslands	الله عشبية / مراعي
rainforest	عدية مطيرة 😛	normous	يغم - هائل
snow	<b>پر</b> جلبد	oast	محل
cubic	fa مكتب	ırther	. 44
volcano	ای برکار	hape	مکل جائی
volcanic	355. <b>d</b>	ry ·	بن نظم لش <sub>د ا</sub>
Antarctic	A القطب الجنوي	rctic	المقيد ا

Hele words thild identify these words

#### Lesson (1)

#### Conjugation of verbs

form	پښکل - بکون	formed	form
include	لتضمن - بشامل	included	include
climb	يتسد	climbed	climbed
cover	يبضى	covered	covered
destroy	يبعو	destroyed	destroy

#### **Definitions**

erupt

canyon a deep narrow place where a river runs between tall rocks

the large round hole in the middle of a volcano crater a hill made of sand shaped by the wind dutte changed or destroyed by rain, wind, the sea etc. erosie send out smoke and fire (from a volcano)

a low area of land between two mountains valley

wetland an area of land that is often covered by water

## Did youkness?

There are thousands of cenotes and allow in Mexico. People go swimming and diving in their cool, clear water.

## Important expressions and prepositions

square kilometer
over 600 meters tall
on the borders
tropical rainforests
a deep narrow place
shaped by the wind

ا متر مربع	fall into
ا بزید طوله عن ۱۰۰ متر	a low area 🕟
على لحدود	at the top
ر غابت استوانية مطبره	made of
مكان صيق عميق	covered by
الشكل بوسطة الرياح	cubic meter

بقع ، بسقط في
منطقه منجفظية
عنى الشهد
يىكون مى
معسی د
مار مكعب

## Note:

## How + adj. dan

How big...?

?....؟ - كم حجم ..... ؟

كم المدة .... ؟

How wide ...?

?.... How tall...?

كم طول .... ؟

- How high ...?

کم ارتفاع .... ؟

- 1-How big is the Ngorongoro Crater?
- 2-How wide are the Victoria Falls?
- 5 How high are the Victoria Falls?
- 4- How tall is Mount Kilimanjaro?
- 5 How big is the Sahara Desert?

- 260 square kilometers.
- 1,708 meters wide.
- 108 meters high.
  - 5,895 meters tall.
- About the size of the USA.
- 6 How long have people lived in the Sahara Desert?
  - Thousands of years.

## Did you know?

There are more than 20 deserts around the world. Asia has the most desert of the continents.

### Look and read.

## NATURAL WONDERS OF AFRICA

عجئت افريقنا الطبيعية

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, deserts, lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls, and volcanoes. It has some of the most famous not re wonders in the world. Let's read about four of these.

عدره الأف يقيم مكان رابع ، به الجيال والصحاري والبحيرات والوديان والغايات المطيرة. هناك سواحل جميلة كبر . به النعض من عجالت الطبيعة الأكثر شهرة في العالم. دعوتا نقراعن أربعة من هذه.

#### 1) Ngorongoro Crater:

The Ngorongoro Crater in Tanzania is the largest volcanic crater in the world. It formed when a volcano erupted millions of years ago. It is



about 260 square kilometers. The sides of the crater are over 600 meters tall, and inside there are wetlands and forests. You can see lots of different animals, birds, and plants there. Many big animals live there, including lions, elephants, buffaloes, and leopards.

حد ١٠٥٠ في سراسيا هي كبر فوهة بركانية في العالم. تشكلت عندما ثار بركان منذ ملابين السنين. - بع مساحين حدى 260 ميلومترا مربعا. يبلغ طول جواتب الحفرة أكثر من 600 متر ، وفي الداخل توجيد من حسم وحسب مكتك ، و ما الكثم من الحسوات والصور والثناتات المختلفة هناك, تعيش هناك عديد من الحيوانات الكبيرة ، بما في ذلك الأسود والقبلة والجاموس والقهود. سلالات فيكتورد:

#### 2) Victoria Falls:

This enormous waterfall is on the Zambezi River, on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. It's 1,708 meters wide and 108 meters high.



Every minute, over 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon which the water has eroded. When the water falls, it makes a lot of noise! ديد الله ۱۱ السائل شع من بها الفتال و على تحدود يعل الفيد و دسانوي. بالمع موض الشلال 1708 د 🕥 🚅 💷 104 😑 🔞 🕥 دفيقة ، يسعط أخبر من 5 ملايين متر مكعب من المياه في واد كدير 💰 بان وبته المياه. عبدما يسقط الماء ، فانه بُحدث الكثير من الضوضاء!

#### 3) Mount Kilimanjaro:

حبل كليمنجارو:

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Scientists think that it hasn't erupted for 360,000 years. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa, at 5,895 meters.



Every year, about 25,000 people climb it, but it is difficult. The mountain is very big and has lots of different ecosystems. It starts in the hot grassland. Farther up, there are tropical rainforests, and at the top there is snow and ice.

التكون جبل كليمنجارو من ثلاثه براكم: معتقدا عاساء المائم تق مند 360 شي سب حس كليسج ، عب الأطول في أفريقيد ، برنفاع 5895 مثر كن عام ، تشبيقه حوال 25 أبعد شخص بكن لامر صعب الحسر كبير جند ومه الكثير من لنظم البيسه المختلفة. ببدأ في الأراسي بعشبت حراد أرضعها أي حبب برجبا إغابات مطيرة استوائية ، وفي الأعلى يوجد ثلج وجليد

#### 4) The Sahara Desert:

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world (the Arctic and the Antarctic are bigger but



الصحراء الكبري:

are cold deserts). It covers eleven countries and is nine million square kilometers - that's about the size of the USA! Some of the sand denescan be about 180 meters high. Although it is a very dry place, some plants and animals live here, and people have lived here for thousands of years, too.

الصعراء الديري هي الاكبر حدود في الدام (لدول مدر مدر مدر مورد كيو صدر وال لغطي إحدى عشرة دولة وتبلغ مساحتها تسعة ملايين كيلومتر مربع وهذا يعادل حجم الولايات لمتحده المريكية! يمكن أن يصل ارتفاع بعض الكثبان الرملية إلى حوالي 180 مترا. على الرعم من الله مكان حاف بنع يه، الأن بعض النبائات والحموانات تعيش هنا ، وقد عاش لناس هنا مم لاف الستين يض

## General Activities

لص الاستماع في ثهاية الكتاب

Listen and c	hoose the corre	ect anewer from	<b>'</b> ,
1. The Victoria Fal	Is are on the		River
a) Zambezi	p) Nile	c) Amazon	1) Mississippi
2. Victoria Falls ar	e · ·		meters wide
a) 1,608	b) 1,708	c) 1,808	a) 1,908
3. Victoria Falls ar	e 108 meters		
a) deep	b) wide	c) high	d) long
4. When the water	falls, it makes a	a lot of	
a) sound	b) voice	c) view	d) noise
Read and co	mplete the text	with the words f	rom the box.

countries - dry - largest - dunes - cities

The Sahara Desert is the 1) hot desert in the world and is nine million square knometers It covers eleven 21 - that's about the size of the USA! Some of the sand 3) can be about 180 meters high. Although it is a very 4) place some plants and animals live here, and people have lived here for thousands of years, too.

#### Read the following fort then answer the questions.

Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three volcanoes. Scientists think that it hasn't erupted for 360,000 years. Mount Kilimanjaro is the tallest mountain in Africa, at 5,895 meters. Every year, about 25,000 people climb it, but it is difficult. The mountain is very big and has lots of different ecosystems. It starts in the hot grassland. Farther up, there are tropical rainforests, and at the top there is snow and ice.

\* Choose the correct answer from ..., . or ..

- Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three
  - a) floods
- b) volcanoes (a) earthquakes (d) craters

	Ulik (2)
	d) Europe
·	people climbi
ons.	1
	es.
anjaro - ?	
rt desert hottes	t in the world
lace - amazing - a	n - is
ver from <b>a</b> , <b>b</b> , <b>c</b> , o	r d.
nzania is the largest	volcanic in the wor
•	
	F
-	-
The second secon	
-	*
•	
	st mountain in  c) America  d e) thousan  ons.  xt?  ice?  e correct sentence  nanjaro - ?  It desert - hottes  lace - amazing - an  ver from a, b, c, o  nzania is the largest and c) dune  can be  et c) wetland place where a river  yon c) crater  to send out smoke  er c) Erupt  a low area of land and c) canyor  50; words about:

The African Continent

ding elements

(amazing - coasts - natural - wonders)

## Lesson (2)

### LANGUAGE

#### Key vocabulary

papyrus المصربون القدماء ancient Egyptians

climate change sail on a boat معبر لمناح

travel by plane حسن جعر صة geographical facts

#### Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs محال عسطمه

#### Present

visited visited visit يزور

affect affected يؤثرعلي affected

traveled يسافر traveled travel

last lasted يدوم / يستمر lasted

#### Irregular verbs

#### Present Pa

get يحصل على got got

tell told told meet

بقابل met met

make made يصنع made

see یری saw seen

eat بأكل ate eaten

do / does يقعل did done

be يكون was / were been

### Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form The second form of the verb

پتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل (بإضافة d, ed, led للفعل المنتظم)

♦ الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ

Regula:

verb + (d / ed / .ed)

Irregular:

the verb changes

e.g. I traveled to Luxor last week.

e.g. We ate fish yesterday.

Usage

No talk about an action that started and finished in the pas

e.g. I went to the park last month.

Negative

.... (مصدر اعمل) + didn't + inf (الفاعل) -...

e.g. I didn't visit the desert last Friday.

Question,

Yes No question

? (مصدر الفعل) + inf. (الفاعر) ?

e.g. End you do your homework? - Yes, I aid. - No, I didn. ..

Wh-question

Q W + did + subject (الفاعل + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

e.g. When gid you travel to Aswan? - I traveled there a year ago.

Keywords

yesterday

اعس last

ago ... ألمات

in (2010)

in the past في عام (١٠١٠)

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a. b. c. tra

to the zoo yesterday.

a) go b) went c) will go

tennis?

d) goes

2. When did you tenns

a) play b) plays c) playing d) played

We Aswan two weeks ago.

a) visit b) visited ;) have visited d) visits

4. Why you go to the market last week?

a) do b) does c) did d) will

We swim in the sea yesterday.

a) didn't b) aren't haven't d) don't

#### Order the words to make con the con-

1. made - tea - of - I - a cup - .

2. did · eat - What - yesterday - you - ?

on - Did - yesterday a ship travel - you - ?

did - an hour - ago - homework - We - our - .

5. didn't - ful - medames - eat - They

### 3 " do at that complete with the resect to the

1. | (travel) to Alexandria last year

2. We 30) shopping two weeks ago.

3. She (meets) her friends last Friday.

4. Sherif Idles' English yesterday.

5. He never (travels) by plane in the past

### Present Perfect Tense.

زمن المضارع التام

Form

1 / We / You / They / plural noun + have + P.P. He / She / It / singular noun has

e.g. I have eaten fish.

e.g. She has seen her friends.

've - have

's = has

#### Usage

- To talk about actions that started in the past and continue to the يبير عن أحداث بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن: present.
  - e.g., I've lived in Cairo for 20 years.
- To talk about an experience.

اللتحدث عن خبرة (تحرية حياتية): ١

e.g. She has met the king.

Negative

I / We / You / They / plural noun + haven't - P.P He / She / It / singular noun + hasn't

e.g. We haven't studied French.

e.g. Ali hasn't seen the new teacher.

Question Yes / No question

Have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun) + PP ? Has + (he / she / it / singular noun)

Have you bought a car?

Yes, I have.

- No, I haven't,

```
Lesson (2)
  Has she traveled to France?
           Yes, she has:
                                   - No, she hasn't.
Wh-question
          have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun)
                                                             + P.P ....?
   Q.W +
           has + (he/she/it/singular noun)
 r white have you been?
                                      I've been to Luxor.
  Keywords '
  just
                توا
e.g. I've just bought a pen.
 Anegula
                     بالقعل
            I/ cooked a meal.
                                           - I have cooked a meal arready.
 · 의 He's
              بعدردتي الان
  vet
               'في السؤال و اثبفي''
e.g. Have you done your homework yet?
e.g No, I haven't done my homework yet.
  ever .
                    من قبل،سىق
                       في السؤال"
 e.g. Have you ever seen an elephant?
  never
                "تعطي معنى النفي"
 e.g. No, I've never seen an elephant.
  Since
                  يأتي بعدها بداية الحدث
 e.g. I've studied English since 2017.
   for
                                   e.g. I've studied English for 7 years.
                "بأتى بعدها مدة الحدث"
```

1	Choose the correct	t answer from	a, b, c, or d.	
1.	Waleed	y and years a second	by b	us, taxi, and train
	a) has traveled	b) travel	c) traveling	d) have traveled
2.	My uncle	- a+ 155 fr 45 m	us abo	ut his trip to Cairo
	a) has told	b) tell	c) have told	d) telling
3.	Grandma		ful meda	mes for breakfast
	a) have made	b) has made	c) making	→ make
4.	We			on a boat
	a) has never sailed		b) sails	
	c) have never sailed	ti i	d) never sailing	g
5.	Aya has never	***		a famous person
	a) meet	b) will meet	c) meets	d) met
1	Order the words			
1. ever - Luxor - to - you - Have - traveled - ?				
2 a traditional She market visited - has .				
3.	has - traveled - Asw	an - to - never	Sara	
4. they another Have country visited ever ?				
5. eaten - He - has - saydeya - never				
	Read and comple	ete with the co	rrect form.	
4.	Thave		(se	e) Omar in the club
2.	We have		(ever) <b>t</b> ı	avelled to America
3.	My grandpa's		A) 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11	(tell) us a nice ston
<b>A.</b>			Have) she bougl	nt an ice cream yell
5.	Have you		(neve	er) sailed on a boal

## **General Activities**

## 1

## Read and complete the text with the words from the have

travel - visited - holiday - went - have gone

Reem and Ahmed are going to Luxor on 1)	with their
parents this year. They haven't 2)	Luxor before.
They are going to 3)	to Luxor from Cairo.
It isn't the first time they've traveled somewhere. They	4)
to Jordan two years ago.	

### (2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1 E.	, ,						
1.	Sherif		,				lile many times.
	a) eat	b)	has eaten		have eaten		
2.	We		\$455\$ 47.66 * Elmopers				Aswan yet.
	a) visited	b)					haven't visited
3.					he traveled	on a	plane or train?
	a) Is				Have		
4.			****************		you	u thi	is story already.
	a) tell	b)	have told				
5.	Have you ever			,			on a ship?
	a) traveled	b)	to travel	c)	travels	d)	traveling
6.	. "*******	.,,,,,,,,	***** **** *		4 A # 655 67 B) E4 6 102404 P		fish soup?
	a) You have eate	n		b)	Has eaten he		
	c) Have you eate	n		d)	You are eating	g	
7.	A) Have you visite		he desert?	3) <b>Y</b>	es, I		
	a) am				has	d)	can
8.	Has Fares					tra	aveled by train?
	a) ever	b)	never	c)	yet	d)	for
9.	Youssef and Wae					se	en an elephant.
	a) has never		have never	c)	are never	d)	never have
10.	Has Mom				fesikh fo	r St	nam El-Nassim?
	a) make						

## Lesson (3)

# MAN-MADE WONDERS OF AFRICA

#### Key vocabulary

man-made	من صنع الإنسان	excited	ا سام
archaeologist	عالم الاثار	incredible	لا يصدق - غير معقول
ruins	أطلال - بقابا	temples <sup>-</sup>	معابد
centuries	قرون	cave	كهف
columns	â.aeî	monuments	الثار

#### Wonders of Africa

Man-made wonders	in Africa	Country	
Paintings in a cave	رسومات على حدران كهب	North Africa	شمان إفريقنا
Ruins of Great Zimbabwe	أطلال زيميابوي العظمي	Zimbabwe	رمبابوث
The Canopy Walk	ممسى كانوبي بروابد	Rwanda	روايدا
Kano City Walls	أسوار مدينة كانو سيجيري	Nigeria	ليجبريا
Pyramids of Meroë	أهرامات ميرو بالسودان	Sudan	السود ن
Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة		
the Valley of the Kings	وادى بملوك	Egypt	العبر
the Sphinx	أبو الهول		

#### Natural wonders

Natural wonders	in Africa Country	
Red Sea Coral Reef	Egypt أنشعت لعرجانية بالتعر أرجير	nen,
Ocavango Delta	Botswana دله وكاسجو	بتسوابا

#### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	P.P
sell	sold	sold
feel	felt بشعر	felt
learn	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
show .	showed بعرض	shown

### \_ Lesson (3) -

### Extra Vocabulary

ground غرب عبر مأنوف unusual حجر special حمر وح stone zebra

## Important expressions and prepositions

from other countries Nyungwe National Park Thousands of years ago There's a lot more to see The Afrikaans Language Monument from all over the world

### Did you know?

There are 54 countries in Africa today. People think there are 1,500 - 2,000 different languages! The main language is Arabic, and there are many other important ones such as Swahili and Yoruba, as well as English, French and Portuguese.

#### Look and read.

## Mun-made Wonders of Africa

### عجائب أمريمية من صنع الإنسان

The natural world in Africa is beautiful, but people in this continent have made many incredible things, too. Some of the most important man-made wonders are in Egypt: the Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu Simbel, and the Valley of the Kings People come from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypt's history. But there is a lot more to see in Africa.

المناف المدهاية الها وصعوا العديد من الاستاء المدهاية الصاريعين سم صدة العجالي التي من اللب الإنسان في مصر: اهرامات الجيزة وأبو الهول ومعادد ابو سميل ووادي تا المار المنادي المناد الرب وهالما لاهاكان والمعرف على باراسع مصرر ولكن هياك الكمام

In North Africa, there are paintings on to be and in caves which people made thousands of verising. They often show animals and people in the past because some of the



paintings snow an mals such as crocodiles that live in water.

في المدل درسي الوجال وحاث على الصحيور ه في جهوات على فسعها الدس سند أأث السعام المالية ها تُظهو الحيوانات والناس. علماء الأثار يعتقدون أن الصحراء لم تكن جاف في الماضي لان تعفق الموجات نظهر على التا مدال المداسمة على تعيس في سنة

In Zimbabwe, there are the rums of Great
we an important city which was built
the 11" and 15" centuries.

في زيمبابوي ، هناك انقاض زيمبابوي العظمى، وهي مديمة مهمه مم بناوها بين القرنين الـ 11 والـ 15.



The state walls, and people here sold lots of things to different sections the world. A newer monument is in South Africa. The state of a state of stone common and opened in the state of the section of

كان لها من مردورة عيم الراز و مراكب هم عدر مراكب ال مستوع من مده حمد به المدي فلسخ في المادة المستوع من مده حمد به المدي فلسخ في عام 6/19 المدير المادة الافرارة عادما حاء المحاص من دراي في افراست العام به كلم بالمن المدير المادة الأفرارة عادما حاء المحاص من دراي في افراست العام به كلم بالمن المدير المنافقة وقستخدم الآن في جنوب أفراستيارة المديرية المنافقة وقستخدم الآن في جنوب أفراستيارة المديرية المنافقة المنافقة

rainformst adventure on The Canopy Walk in Nyungue National Park. The bridge was built in 2016. It is 160 meters long and 74 meters above the ground. It is in the highest part of the trees, so we tors can see monkeys and birds.



الوار رواندا سكان ن رهومها المنتامرة مذهلة في العادات المطاردودلك على سسار الأدوال فا حديثه ليونجوي الوص المنافرة المنافرة

والدروب الفرود والطمو

## General Activities

## 1 Real and remine in

### Egypt - history - Kings - man-made - princes

Some of the most important 1, worders are to . The Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, the temples of Abu-Simbel and the Valley of the 3. People coma from all over the world to visit these places and learn about Egypts 4

### Read the following test these are the

In Zimbabwe, there are the ruins of Great Zimbabwe, an important city which was built between the 11th and 15th centuries in had very large stone walls, and people here sold lots of things to different countries around the world.

A newer monument is in South Africa The Afrikaans Language Monument is made of stone columns and opened in 1975. The Afrikaans language developed when people from other countries came to Africa. The language has words from lots of different countries, and is now used in South Africa and Namibia.

#### A) Choose the correct answer aro:

- Great Zimbabwe city was built between the 11' and 15
  - a) decades (i) centuries months
- The Afrikaans Language Monument is in
  - a; Egypt
    - Zimbabwe Nigeria
- South Arnea

Veais

- The Afrikaans Language is now used in
- countres. th five
- a) two b) three c) four B) Answer the following questions
- 4 What does the underlined pronoun it refer to?

Where is the Afrikaans Language used now?

## (3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

40							
1.	Africa is a		46.5-24 402-42				
	a) lake	b}	country	c)	city	d)	continent
2.	Some of the most	imp	ortant man-r	nad	e		are in Egypt
	a) wonders	b)	wanders	c)	mountains	d)	rivers
3.							dry in the past
	a) Doctors	b)	Teachers	c)	Farmers	d)	Archaeologists
4.	in Zimbabwe, the	re a	re the		of Great Zir	nbál	owe which was
	an important city.						
Ę	a) rules The Afrikaans Las	ום נם	rums aan Maassas	C)	roles	d)	oars
J.	The Afrikaans La	ngu	age ivionume	nt is	made of stor	ie	
£	a) poles						
	Visitors to Rwanda						
 7	a) match			c)	adventure		
7.	You can enjoy vis				11 -		of Abu Simbel
a	a) rocks						
8.	The Red Sea Cor						
_	a) natural						
<b>9</b> .	You can see paintir						
- 0	a) houses					d)	
10.	In which countrie						7
	a) symbol			c)	Language	ďĴ	
11.	What's special at						in Rwanda?
-	a) Walk	b)	Run	c)	Ruin	d)	Painting
4	Order the wor	ds t	o make corre	ect s	entences.		
	*						
1.	Desert - the past	- 11	ic sanara - c	ıry -	ın - wasn't		
2.	see- and- Rwan	ıda -	in - Visitors	- bii	rde - monkov	^	000
	333		iii violitoro	Dil	ida - monkey	S -	can .
3.	54 - Africa - in - 1	her	e - countries -	are	g		
4.	world - The natu	ıal -	Africa - is - b	eau	tiful- in		



### STORY: THE STORM-CHASER

السحاة الأمريكية

### Key vocabulary

storm-chaser
photographer
extreme weather
dust storm

hurricane متنبع العواصف thunderstorm مصور فوتوعر في flood طقس شدس snow

### Extra vocabulary

forecast trip frightened loud The USA نشرة حوية ـ تتبا event دحلة فصيرة competition خاتف during

#### Conjugation of verbs

	Present		Past	P.P	
fly	4	بطير - يسافر	flew	flow	
drive		بعود	drove	driver	
take		وحد	took	taken	
win		بمور	won	11.50	
send		برسل	sent	sen*	
hear		لسمع	heard	hear	
keep		بحافظ على	kept	Feot	
forecast		يتنيا	forecast / ec	forech /	

### Important expressions and prepositions

20 kilometres away	على بعد عشرين كيلو مع	stay at	ا ، قمه في
'ake photos	يتقط صور	close to	·
'বেল্ড safe	بحافظ على سلامه	travel to	
¹€€\ - snow	النوج كنيفه	or work	C = 1.
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	win a prize for	4
dangerous situations	موافف خطيرة	drive avar	u.t
P			

Help your child identify these words.

these words. Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 77

### Study the flowing.

The was white and it looked like ice cream!

عين العصفة لا عدد، منه ماده دار الاس الميان

The was very noisy. The sky was black and it rained all the afternoon.

إلى الأعصار صاخباء كائت السماء سوداء وأمطوت طوال فغرة الظهيرة

After the ... there was a lot of dust on my parents' new car.

عد العاصفة الترابية كان هناك الكتير من التراب على سيارة و لماي الجديدة

The followed the thunderstorm in his car .

يه متعقب العواصف العاصفة الرعدية وهو في سيارته.

Read the story.

The storm-chases was were you

Kamal's parents often went to other countries for their work. Usually, Kamal and his younger sisters stayed at home with their grandparents. Two years ago. Kamal's parents said. "You can come with us when we next go away for work." Kamal was very excited because his parents were somethasers. These are people who travel to places where a number of another form of is forecast. They get very close to the extreme weather event to study it.

المها ها دهب والدا كمال إلى بلدان أحرى معملهم. عادة ، كان ساى كسار «حراثه في مماري سع أحداد فله المها عامين ، قال والدا كمال: "بمكمك أن تأتي معما المرة القادمه عدما المدر المعمر كان كمال متحمسا حدا لأن والديه كانا متعقبين للعواصما هولاء هم المشحاص المايي ...

Kama' and his parents flew in a big plane to the USA where they could study hurricanes. How can Their you when you work?" Kamal asked them when they arrived "You can take some photos for us," they said, and they took something from a bag it was a new camera! Kamal had seen in Egypt but not a nurricane it was very exciting.

78 Unit (2) Look around you

Help your child read the story.

When the hurricane was twenty kilometers away they مراد المعاملة المعاملة

عد عشرين كتنومرا ، الطبقوا بالسيارة لرؤيته الققط كمال بعض لصور للاعصار والديم الإعصار كالت الرياح قولة

"Are you frightened?" his dad asked Kamal. "No. pecause I منا معرفي " said Kamal. When the storm came too near to rear away. Since that trip, Kamal has been to many other places a many other places and a second of second other of second other othe

Last year, his morn said, "Why don't you send some photos is a competition?"So Kamal sent the photos you can see be awards. prize for child photographese, and he also found that he is one youngest storm-chasers!

المراجع والمراجع والمراجع المراجع المر



## **General Activities**

والاستماع في مهاية الكتاب

<ol> <li>Kamal has been to many places with his</li> <li>a) friends</li> <li>b) father</li> <li>c) mother</li> <li>d) parents</li> <li>They saw heavy</li> <li>a) snow</li> <li>b) ice</li> <li>c) rain</li> <li>d) stones</li> </ol>
a) friends b) father c) mother d) parents  2. They saw heavy in the mountain
of Igni
They saw amazing dust storms in the
a) forest b) club c) desert d) tent
radial has learned a lot about extreme
a) weather b) feather c) leather d) climate
Read and complete the text with the words from the box.
hurricane / study / storm-chasers / extreme / make
Kamal was very excited because his parents were
These are people who travel to all
2)
They get very close to the extreme weather event to 4) Weather is forecast
Chaose the correct and a second to 4)
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
1. The followed the thursday
a) farmer b) storm-chaser c) engineer d) doctor
was white and looked title in the
3. The weather d) for
The sky was black and it rained all the are was very not
A A41
there was a live
5. Kamal b) flood c) earthquake d) clouds
b) took photos of the hurrical
(a) Unit (2) Look around you (b) drove

*				
6.	After the a) snow	h) hurricane	, there was lot of dust storm	of dust on our car.
7.	Kamal		•	nild photographers.
	May		ε÷ gained	
8.			\$15.50 A AM A FO F	
	a) weather	b) whether	c) wizard	<pre>d feather</pre>
4	Order the we	ords to make cor	rect contences.	
1.	he - Mass - take	n - of - photos - hi	undreds ~ ?	
2.	on - mountairı -	Heavy - fell - the	- snow	,
3.	are - thunderste	orms - in - interes	ted -	
4.	some photos -	They - of - hurrica	ane - the - took -	
<b>(5</b>	Write a text	of ( ) we	ords about:	
		The storn	n-chaser	
Gu	iding words-			

18

(photographer - hurricanes - dust storms - thunderstorms - floods)



Drott.	,	تدفق العادين
pretty village poem burn material Java Island Definitions	فرية قصيدة	الله المان
Delinitions		

erupt soil lava mud Stou osh	when fire and rocks come out of the top of a volcano the top part of the Earth in which plants grow hot liquid rock that comes out of volcanoes soft, wet material that moves down mountains something soft and gray that you find when a fire stops burning
100	

## important expressions and prepositions

a safe place	and brei	positio
the island people	مکان امن	come
the helping hand	سكان الحزيرة	go
look down	دد لمساعدة	mix
82 Unit (2) Look	بنصر لأسفل على	come

82 Unit (2) Look around you

م عصر أن بنعرف على هذه الكلمات. Help your child identify these words.

فر الركان)

سركانية

المؤالطين

لاين

### Good Inings and bud t

#### Java

fact file

Java is an island.

There are many volcanoes on Java, for example Salak.

When a volcano erupts, ash and fire come out of it and the people in the villages have to go away from their homes.

. The soil in Java is very good for growing plants

I'd like to live on Java because it is a pretty place.



I wouldn't like to live on Java because it has a lot of dangerous volcanoes.



### الكمات المتناغمة صونيا Rhijming words

#### they're words with the s

fire	higher
thirty-nine	online
away	stay
goes	flows
look	book
plood	mud

## Listen and read the poem. The Volcanoes of Janus

Let me take you to the productistand of which look down on the policy island of which look down on the policy island of which look down on the policy islander.

The names of the volcanoes are:
Salak, Guntur, Karaha, Malabar ...
But there are another thirty-nine,
You can find their names online!

When they erupt, there's ashand fire,

one fills the air, going higher and higher,

The island people have to go away,

to a safe place where they can stay.

The lava and ash mix with mud flows,
This makes sollwhere good food grows,
When the farmers come back to the land,
They thank the volcanoes for the helping hand.

## General Activities

1	that ond cotag	pict : the te	xt with t	he war	ds from ti	he hox.	
	Villa	iges - volcar	noes - isla	and - la	/a - safe		
	Let me	e take you to	the prett	l <b>y</b> 1) .		of Java,	
		ost everythin				4	
	It o	comes from	Java's 3)	45817 14 444			
	which look	k down on th	18 4)		belo	W.	
2	्रांग कर होन रव	rrect answe	r from a,	, b, 4. d	er d.		
	The hot red	q	uickly car	ne dow	n the side	of the volcano	).
	a) lava	b) seed	c)	mud	' d)	ash	
)	If the volcanoes	, fire a	ind rocks	will cor	ne out of t	he top of them	1,
	a) make						
	After three days of						٦.
	, mud bank						
,	In a few months, t						3.
	a) sail						
5	When the fire sto	opped burnir	ng, there v	was lots	of	on the ground	ť.
	a) ash	b) water	c)	wood	d)	lava	
ŝ	The		ave to go	away v	then the vi	olcanoes erup	t.
	a) island	b) river	c)	sea	d)	lake	
3	William a text o	FIFTY (50)	words a	aboux			
			land of				
àui	iding words.						
		tty - lava - v	olcanoe	s - eru	pt - soil)		

Help your child deal with such questions. Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 85 ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثر هذه الأسئلة.

## Key vecabi

arch

hole

natural

sandstone

i unusual

rainbow فحة / ا

description

shape حيجر رملي

### Conjugation of verbs

write

ride

forget

take

Past

wrote .--

rode برئب

forgot بنسر

took بأحد

Written

115.

Ji,

العياة البرية

بجعوعة مور

الغلوء

. . با

ridden

forgotten

taken

### Important

late afternoon

water bottle \*

white limestone

look orange

in the early morning

geological formations

Nambung National Park

- wildlife

a group of عادة منا

full of حجو حبر أنبض

一个一个一个一个一个

wild flowers بيدو يرتفال اللون

sun hat أ المبيح الناكر

tourist brochure

ride a horse

would like to

, 1.0350m (6) \_\_\_\_

### lead the description

## National Monument - Utah, USA

مير مرس سي الرحيد ، ربيا الموليات المنحدة الأمريكية معر مرس سي الرحيد ، ربيا الموليات المنحدة الأمريكية

Rainbow Bridge is one of
the largest natural arches
in the world. It is also 200
million years old. It is on
Lake Powell in Utah, USA.
It is 88 meters tall and it is
made of red and brown sandstone.



رفرير السبعية في العالم بل ال عمرة الصا 200 مليول سنة. هو الولايات لمتحدة الأمريكية. يبلغ طوله 88 مترا وهو مكون من الحجر

A river ercoeda hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many years.

Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monumentsince 1910.

If you want to visit it, you have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it

سب التاكل في الحجر الرمبي وشكل قوس على مدى سنوات عديدة. يعنبر 1910. إذا كنت ترغب في زيارته ، عليك أن تأخذ فارب، أو تركب

It is in a very hot desert. So, you should visit it in the spring or in the fall. Don't forget to take your water bottle and a ...!

رته في الربيع أو في الخريف. لا يدس أن تاحد زجاجه

Hal

### Read the decription

## The Pinnacles

The Pinnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia.



### يمم الصخرية هي واحده من أكثر التكوينات الحيولوجية عير العادية في غرب أسترائيا.

They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are 25.000 to 30.000 years old. They are made of white limeston which the rain and wind have eroded into different shapes.

بممجموعة من الصخور البيضاء الطويلة في مثارة نامبونج الوصني. وعمرها يبروح من 25 إلى 30 الف سنة. وكونت من الحجر الجاري الأبيض بفعل الأمطار والرماح إلى أشكال مختلفة.

The tallest columns are between three and five meters high. If you want to visit the Pinnacles, the best time of day to see them is in the early morning or late afternoon.

بروح ارتفاع الأعمدة الأطول بإر ماراء وحسمة مثار. إذا كنت ترعم في ردرة عمم ، قال أفضر وقف في أنبوه الرفيتها هو في الصباح الباكر أو في وقت مناخر بعد الظهر

At these times, the sun makes them look orange against the yellow sand dunes of the desert. The best time of year to see them is between August and October when the desert is full of beautiful wild flowers! You can drive there from the city of Perth in two hours.

له هذه لأوقات، بعنعل الشعب الأعمارة تدوو برتقالية الله إلى مثال الكند و برعميه النبسور من المسعوا، المساد من المسعوا، المستعلى السنه لرفيتهم هو بين أعسمس واكتوبو عنده تكون لصعواء ملينة بالزهور البرب المصيلة المكلمة المتاده الى هناك من عليمة بيرد في عضون ساعتين.



حسه وضف عن حلوني حيونوجي غربيا.

### in:

- To introduce the topic, start the first sentence with the name of your geological formation.
- Write why this geological formation is important or special in the same sentence.
- Next, include the location and age of the formation
- Explain how it was formed.
- Describe what it looks like and how big it is.
- 🎏 Add extra, interesting information about it.
- Tell people how they can visit it.

Do some research. Use the internet and complete the table

Name Location Age Size / Shape Made of Froded by When to visit How to get there

Use the information to write a description of . ) words.

## Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

### Lake - eroded - sandstone - arches - Nile

Rainbow Bridge	is one of the lar	gest natural 1,	
It is also 200 million ye	ears old It is or	gest natural 1)	Do the Work
USA It is 90 materia		-lt t	Owell in It
USA. It is 88 meters for A river 4)	hole in the sand	stone and has form	Mail 3)
A river 4)a		100 1011	ned the arch man
			,
Choose the co			
1. Rainbow	is one of t	he largest natural a	arches in the
a) Pole	b) Pyramid	c) Stone	Bride World
2. A river	a hole in the	e sandstone and ha	of bridge
a) washed	h) watered	c) eroded	as formed the ardi
3. You can	2/	a horse to	a) filled
a) hit	b) drive	a horse to vis	Sit Rainbow Bridge
	ke your water he	c) walk	d) ride
4. Don't forget to ta	b) moon	nue and a	, hai
5. Rainbow Bridge	is a patural seed	c) sun	d) planet
5. Rainbow Bridge	is a natural geor	ogical .	
a) nation		c) information	d) formation
6. The monument i		* 111 c westingspad ow extended as a se	-4- 4-3 -4-17 + 4-11
a) paper	b) fabric	c) sandstone	d) plastic
7. You should visit	the Rainbow Brid	dge in the	season.
a) October	b) Friday	c) summer	d) weak
8. The Pinnacles a	re a group of tall	white	
a) trees	b) clothes	c) shops	d) rocks
			200

## 3 Resultie infloration - Augustions

The Picnacles are one of the most unusual geological formations in Western Australia. They are a group of tall white rocks in the Nambung National Park. The Pinnacles are 25,000 to 30,000 years old. They are made of white limestone. The tallest columns are between three and five meters high. The best time of day to see them is in the early morning or late afternoon. The best time of year to see them is between August and October when the desert is full of beautiful wild flowers! You can drive there from the city of Perth in two hours.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1.	The Pinnacles are	one of the mos	t unusual	formation	20
	a) local	b) geological	c) historical	physical	13.
2.	The Pinnacles are	e made of white		, p	
	a) sand dunes		rocks	limostone	
3	You can drive the	re from the oils.	_	, limestone	

a) 2 b) 60 c) 120 d) 40

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What's the text about?
- 5 What is the best time of day to visit the Pinnacles?

### 4. Order the words or and account operionees

- i years Rainbow 200 old million is Bridge -.
- 2 a hole sandstone A river the in eroded -
- 3 is -a very -desert -hot The monument -in
- 4. to -water Don't -bottle -your -take -forget -

minutes.



# STORY: A BALLOON RIDE

### Key vocabulary

balloon منطاب basket

ribbon طین ribbon

flame اطنی flame

ينعن / سعى

### Extra vocabulary

tickets نداکر diary

palm tree مهرجان

tiny رحلة حوية

enormous مسرور/سعبد

rope تماثين rope

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs ashed deel

	Present	Past	pp
iaugh		laughed بصحك	laughed
pick		i magnou	raugneu

drop فقد picked picked dropped dropped

### irregular verbs فعال عدر منظمة

Prese	nt Past	P.P
fly	flew بطير/بساير	flown
fall find	<u>وقع</u> fell	fallen
shine	found بجد	found
7 MACA TABLES	shone تشرق/نسطع	shone

Unit (2) Look around you

Help your child identify these words.

المتعلق المتعاون على هذه الكلمات. المتعاون على هذه الكلمات.

رمان ا مفكرة

حبل

### Lesson (7)

### Definitions

ribbon a long, soft piece of material

gentle slow, not fast or extreme

busket people use it to carry things, and a big one can carry

people

the burning gas that you see in a fire

light / lit make/made something start to burn

### Important expressions and prepositions

hot air balloon

a hat on his head

a perfect weather

have a ride

climb into

touch the clouds

special coat

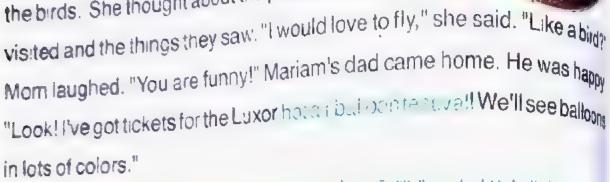
fall out of

سعاد هوای

## Listen and read the story.

"Come inside, Mariam," said Mom, "It's late."

Mariam was in the garden. She loved watching the birds. She thought about the places they



Unit (2)

الدابي التعالى إلى الداخل يا مريم". "الوقت متأخر" كانت مريم في الحديقة. كانت تحب مندهدة لطبور فكوت في الاه كر الني زاروها والاشياء التي راولا، قالما حد عند المحد عند المحد عند المال الطيور؟ أنت مضد حدد الماد مردم لي المارل، كان سعد القالم المقاطيد ذات الألوان الكثيرة."

Mariam was very excited. All week, she thought about the festival. Finally, the day arrived. Mariam was watching everything when she saw a tall man. He had a special coat and a hat on his head. He was a hot air balloon pilot. As he walked away, a book fell out of his bag. He didn't know. Mariam ranto pick it up.

"Look, Mom!" she said. "It's a book about hot air balloon (hohe." "Oh no!" said Mom. "It's his It's about everywhere he's been. ""We must give!" back!" said Manam. Together they ran until they found the man."

المنامريم "انظري يا أميا". "إنه كتاب عن رحلات منطاد هواي. ذالت اذم "ايه ۱۵٪ "إبه عد عر مه: إنها عر

### \_ Lesson (7)

Hello! Did you drop this book? Gaid Marai day Thank you! the man said. "This book is important I write, else ywhere that! have traveled to in the balloon! I want to thank you - would you like to have a ride?" He pointed to a beautiful balloor. Yes please! They said

ر سکا در در در و تحصور کرده کی دیگر ی میشاد - می<sub>ن</sub>

"It's perfect weather today, with no rain and a gentlewind," he said.

They followed him to the balloon and climbed into the basket. Mariam



watched as he litthe flame As the air inside the balloon got not, he dropped the rope and the balloon slowly climbed into the air.

م مسل من ساد، بار يطره بارج بصفة البعوم في المنظاد وضعانوا الى السنة وساهدته ويو يسعن اللهاب مست بهود دخل ساهدته المنظاد ببطاء في

Soon, they were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor. The wind olew them gently through the clear blue sky. They saw green rields and sandy deserts, palm trees, dunes, and mountains.

ساسا في المسافية، راوا المسافية، راوا المسافية، راوا المسافية، راوا المسافية، راوا المسافية، راوا المسافية، راوا

They flew over enormous statue, and beautiful temples. The Nile looked like a silver ribbon. Everything was quiet, and the houses cars, and boats were tiny. The sun shone and it tell like they could touch the clouds "Now I know what it's like to be a bird!" said Mariam.

المنادل عندمة مع الدرجميلة. بدا النيل مثل الشريط الفضي. كان كل شيء هادنا ، وكانت المنادل عن ضخمة مع الدرجميلة والنيل مثل الشريط الفضي المنادل المنادل

Help you

# al a militas

# Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

11.	<b>(1)</b>	excit	ed - tickets- exc	iting
	balloo	n - statues - can	ed - tickets- exc	,
	an inmode	ed came home. He	e had 1)	···· for the لرسين
One d	lay. Mariam 5 uz	Carial Mariam	's family were ve	ery 3)
hot ai	(2)	105tival.	ov were flying o	ver the heavy
Thev	climbed into the	a balloon, Soon tri	ey were flying o	panetic l
oth ( A	fluxor They fle	ew over enormous	; 4) and	beautiful tempies
(2)	Choose the c	orrect answer fro	m :, 4, 5, or .	
			is a long, s	oft piece of mater
		h) hacket	c) balloon	d) ribbon
	a) flame	D) Dasket	is to make son	nething start to bu
	To light	b) fall	c) fly	
	a) light The word "	<i>b)</i> 10.11	' means slow	
	a) fast		c) quick ,	
4.	People use		****	to carry thing
	a) baskets	b) balls	c) ribbons	d) balloons
5.	El .		the burning gas t	that you see in all
	a) Flag	b) Oxygen	c) Air	d) Flame
ક.	A	is the person	who flies a plane	e or a hot air ballw
	a) pilot	b) farmer	c) teacher	d) baker

### 3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. birds - Watching - loved - .

2. about air - he book - flights - hot - balloon - is 
a ride - like - have - to - you - ?



### Read the following text then answer the questions.

Mariam loved watching birds. She wanted to see what they see.

One day, Mariam's dad came home. He had tickets for the Luxor hot air balloon festival. Mariam was very excited. When the day arrived, Mariam and her family went to the festival. Mariam was with her parents when she saw a tall man. Something fell. It was a diary. Mariam wanted to give it back. "Thank you," said the pilot. "Would you like to have a ride?" Mariam's family were very excited and they climbed into the balloon. Soon, they were flying over the beautiful city of Luxor. They flew over enormous statues and beautiful temples.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. Mariam loved watching
  - a) animals
    - b) birds
- c) sports
- d) clouds

- 2. The festival was in
  - a) Aswan
- b) Cairo
- c) Giza
- d) Luxor

- 3. Mariam's family were very
  - a) tired
- b) excited
- c) sick
- d) noisy

### B) Answer the following questions.

- 4. What fell from the tall man?
- 5. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?



### 5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding words: A trip on a hot air balloon

(Luxor - pilot - gentle - flame - tiny - statues - temples)

## Writing Corner

## Wonders of Africa

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, declared lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls volcanoes. It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the like Ngorongoro Crater, Victoria Falls, Mount Kilimanjaro and the Sa Desert. There are man-made wonders too, like the Pyramids of Gi

## Rainbow Bridge in the USA

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the last also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA it meters tall and it is made of red and brown sandstone. A river ero hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument since 1910. If you to visit it, you have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it. It is in that desert. So, you should visit it in the spring or in the fall. Don't for take your water bottle and a sun hat.

### The Suhara Deserve

The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world. It is eleven countries. Some of the sand dunes can be 180 meters Although it is a hot and dry place, some animals and plants live

## Review on Unit (2)

### Vocabulary

valley 503 crater canyon dunes 'واي صيق ۽ مفحمر wetlands erode 105, by 55 storm-chaser erupt hurricane hach thunderstorm dust storm انبصاد flood photographer mountain ، وجود غورتر غرافي , grassland coast man-made مسرير - منحمين excited ruins علم آڈار archaeologist century de columns lava Soil حمم بركانية mud flow ash تدني العين arch diany فيس light - lit

### **Natural Wonders**

The Sahara Desert Mount Kilimanjaro

Help your child ravie

pilot

ribbon

Jan a gentle

hot air balloon

flame بشعل - شعل

Victoria Falls منادت فيكسونيا Ngorongoro Crater

## Prosent Perfect Tense

Form

Subject + Inc. / Lat + P.P

e.g. Tve played tennis.

e.g. She in pizza

Negative

Subject + harrier / are all + P.P.

e.g. We haven't statical French.

e.g. He early

Question

BS. No question Have / Mail + subject + P.P ....?

e.g., has a you pought a TV?

e.g., he a bike

+ < 6/ < + subject + P.P ....?

e.g. Where have you have? - I've been to Luxor.

Keywords

I've just met my teacher.

Have you ever seen a lion?

No, I've never seen a lion.

She's a ready fed the hens.

She's fed the hens already.

## pictation on Unit (2)

### product de affecte front a b c Mount Kilimanjaro is made cl two ) three c) four The voicables have it erupted for thousands of tive 2218 Weeks months Mount Killman aro is the tallest mountain in y years Africa Asia . Europe !. Amenç At the top of Kilman arc, there is pant , water sand d snow in de lande de mes este sines.

veis to early-gra oparents - weather - storm-chases

Kamal's parents often went to other countries for their work. Usually, Kamal and his younger sisters stayed at home with their Kama, was very excited because his parents w ! These are people who travel to places where a or another form of extreme 4) ...... .. S fore:

# (3) Read the following to band another the questions.

Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural arches in the largest It is also 200 million years old. It is on Lake Powell in Utah, USA N meters tall and it is made of red and brown sandstone. A river end hole in the sandstone and has formed the arch over many, many & Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument since 1910. If you a very hot door of take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it. It is a very hot desert. So, you should visit it in the spring or in the fall. forget to take your water bottle and a sun hat.

### Litrities On Unit (2)

- 1. Choose the correct answer from
  - The ; nam idea of the text is " Rambow
  - a) Lake b) Bridge c) Sea
    - c) Sea : Country
- 2 Rainbow Bridge has been a National Monument . .
  - a) 2010 b) 1920 c) 1901
- you should visit Rainbow Bridge in the
- a) winter a) spring ... Summer
- Answer the following questions.
- 4. How tall is Rainbow Bridge?
- 5. How do you get to Rainbow Bridge?



- A Read and write 1 (True) or f (False)
- 1. Jubari left the wadi.
- 2 The crocodile looked like a dead tree
- Jubari is a lion.
- There are camels in the Wadi of camels.
- B complete the following sentences.
- i. The water was very, very
- · Juban looked and saw a big

ani nal

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

٠.					" - Sec-	
1.	I have	b) never	c)	ago	d) since	
	a) ever	and the second second			you go yester	
2.	Where -		c)		M/ QIB	
	a) do	b) have		t	traveled to the ly	
3.	Have you	. A -lenady	c)	ever	d) never	
	a) just	b) already	- 1		Luxor two days	
4.	She	n all short	c)	has visited	d) visited	
	a) visits	b) will visit	•/		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
5.	Where have you	whether the series are depleted and the	c)	been	d) were	
	a) be b) bein	b) being	0) 200.		pizza last w	
6.	We	400	la	will eat	d) ate	
	a) est	b) have eaten	C)	Will Car	<i>a</i> / <i>a</i> /o	

### a) eat 6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1. parents Have Sudan to been Kamal's ?
- got the We festival for tickets have .
- countries Desert The Sahara covers eleven .



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A man-made wonder

**Guiding elements:** 

(The Sphinx - Giza - head - body - long - tourists - fantastic)

I with such questions

# Activities On Review (1)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a b						
1	The Victoria Falls	s on the Zambez	i			
1.	The view	b) Lake	C)	River	11	00-2
	a) Sea Every minute,	million cubic me	eter	s of water falls	into	a sig illatiyor
2.	Every	b) four	c)	five	d)	SIX
	a) three	,				ne big panyon
3.	The water has	b) stopped	c)	eroded	- 4	dried
1	a) erupted	Ψ/ · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	1	makes a lot	ofn	oise as "fais
	The	b) oil	6)	juice	4	sait
	a) water	,	-		مطم	in a v
200	The second second	alata the text u	rith	words from	THE	DUA

### Read and complete the text with words from

## Archaeologists - man-made - natural - volcano - desert

which means The Great Pyramid is 1) can learn a ot about that people made it. 2) history from buildings like this. We can also learn a lot about 3 wonders of the world such as the Ngorongoro Crater For example we which erupted millions of years ago know this was once a 4)

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Have you ever visited a rainforest? In Rwanda, you can see a beautiful rainforest in Volcanoes National Park. You will see a lot of different animals there like monkeys snakes, and birds. If you are lucky, you might see a gorilla, too. You must be very quiet as you walk through the forest. You can't talk foudly to your friends and family. You don't want to scare the gorillas and other animals away.

## A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- In Rwanda you can see a beautiful
  - a) field
    - b) rainforest c) desert
- d) storm

- 2. The underlined word " " means a) ugly c) calm b) sad the gorillas and other animals away You shouldn't a) protect b) scare d) help Answer the following questions.
- 4. What animals can you see in Rwanda?
- 5 How must you be as you walk through the forest?



### Read and write ( se) or? ( also).

- Jubari and his mother eat the desert dalfodil.
- Gazelles eat the leaves of the acada trees
- Jubari is going to look for Wadi of the Gazelles.
- Jubari's mother asked him to torget what she taught him.

### Complete the following sentences:

1. Jubari thought the mangroves were

for gazelles

2. Jubari's thought the beach was

for gazelles

### Review (1) -----

### · Chrosc e

a) see

b) sees

have seen to saw

my best friend two hours ago.

We have .

b) were

to Aswan.

a) be

being

d. been he eats fresh vegetables and fruit.

3. He is healthy

a) and

b) but

c) 180

d) because

They met a man

a) who

b) which

(c) where

d) whose

5. She went to the bakery

bought sôme bread

works in a garden.

a) but This is the school

b) so

c) and

d) because

we learn

a) which

b) where c) when

d) who

· Order one water it is a country of the

1. natural - The - beautiful - is - in - Africa - world .

2. ecosystem The Amazon - an important is - rainforest - .

3. Island • volcanoes - are There many on Java .

Write County of HTY .50

FORTH MILES

### Guiding words:

(get up - breakfast - walk - sport - fruit and vegetables - go to bed)

## TERM (1) PROJECT (1)

#### Cilantro



This plant is a herb. It is usually about 45-50 centimeters tall.

Ithas a lot of green leaves . The seeds are white or light pink. Bees love them:

The flowers make a lot of small green fruit. Then this fruit turns light brown. These are the seeds which are called coriander.

This plant is originally from the area around the Mediterranean Sea. It grows in sunny treshwater ecosystems.

Cilantro is not endangered.

People use the leaves for lots of different things. For example, you can put them in Lads or soups. People also like the leaves with meat, smell of the leaves. and fish.

People use the seeds in food and in traditional medicine. The ancient Egyptians used coriander for different types of medicine, too.

I like this plant because it is delicious and useful. My mom puls it in my favorite salad. I also like the

نبات

أورلق

بنور

مياه عدده ليه

سلطة

الذير

## NON-FICTION BEALL

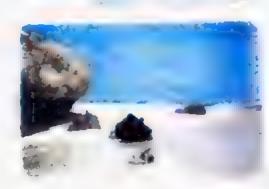
# INCREDIBLE PLACES AROUND THE WORLD

There are some amazing places around the world which are very famous. For example, we all know the Sahara Desert. Mount Everest, and the Amazon rainforest. Here we look at some other incredible places which you might not know.

قدر المدار السنفية في حميع نحاه تعالم والتي تكون مشهورة جلاد على سعيل المثال ، تعلم المدال المثال ، تعلم الماكن الرابعة

#### سرم اللمس-مرسة علم

Sharm El Luli beach is one of the most beautiful beaches on the Red Sea. Its clean, blue waters make it very popular with tourists. Divers also love going here because you can see many colorful fish.



You can sometimes see turtles, too. The beach is 60 kilometers south of Marsa Alam.

حمد السعاط على سعم الاحمر، مياهه الله فاء الصافية تجعله يعظى المساك المداد من الأسماك المداد من الأسماك المداد من الأسماك المداد من المساك المداد من المساك المداد من المداد المدا

### الحسر العملاق-ايرلندا الشمالية

The Giant's Causeway is in Northern Ireland. It's made of around 40,000 black rock columns which rise from the sea. Scientists by



the sea. Scientists have discovered that they formed when a volcano erupted 50-60 million years ago, but some people say that giants made them so they could get to the Scottish Island of Staffa across the sea!

الله الله من اعملة الصخور السوداء التي توسع من اعملة الصخور السوداء التي توسع من اعملة الصخور السوداء التي توسع من الملة المحدول من المداري من المداري من المداري من المداري من المداري من المداري من المدارية عبر المحرا

### The Matte horn Switzerland حدل ما ارهورن-سوسيدا

Some people say this is the most beautiful mountain in Europe, It's 4,478 meters tall and has the shape of a pyramid with four sides. It's like this because of the way the ice eroded the rock. About 3,000 people climb the mountain every year. a har in a fire of the collis star of a fire and it

### Volmez Canyon Hawaii, USA reprincipant of high of give unique and and

The islands of Hawaii are part of the USA, although they are more than 7,000 kilometers away in the Pacific Ocean. The Waimea Canyon here is an amazing place. Ariver has eroded a canyon which is 16 kilometers long and nearly 1,0,00 meters deep. المستعمدة الإسويكية عصل المعاصر الوالية المستعمدة الإسويكية عصل



(1900 متر نقويها

Waimea is the Hawaiian word for red water. It's called this because of the red soil which makes the river look red.

المعبط الهادُّي الماري والمن المكان العج، لماركؤا بياري الماري ويدري الماريون

and the contract of the second of the second

### Carro Georo - Nicaragua, South America Sugaritica pai contribute o pully an

Cerro Negro is a volcano in Nicaragua, and it has erupted more than 20 times in the last 160 years! However, it has not erupted

for more than 20 years, so it not usually dangerous. Its name means black hill and many people climb up its black slopes. When they get to the top, many people surf back down again! الكترسي 20 ما منال بي مرس دار السياسي المساور

## NON-FIGURE WILLIAM

### INCREDIBLE BUILDING AROUND THE WORLD Look and read.

We all know the famous man-made places around the world like the pyramids of Giza and the Sydeny Opera House but every year people are always trying to build more and more amazing buildings. Here we look at some other incredible man-made places which you might not know.

ر من صبع المد حور بعام مثل أهرامات الحيرة ودار أوبرا سيدني ، مراء مدارد سريد مريد من المدي لمدهدة، هذا دنظى لي بعض الاماكن

### عادي الأسكاد الله الاسكندرية، عصر

Opened in 2010, the famous Bibliotheca Alexandria has space for eight million books! The beautiful modern building by the Mediterranean is the same shape as Alexandria's harbor, and has a 32-meter high wall with writing from languages through history.

B.ha.



الاستكندرية انشبهبرة في عبام 2010 دميا مستاحة لثمانية ملاييين 5تياب! عني الأحر الأبدع السوسط هو نعيس شيكل مبياء الاسكندرية المالية عليه عنانه من اللغات عبد التاريخ

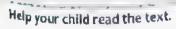
#### مسي هابيتان ٥٦. مونتربال، كندا The street frances idah.

Many of us live in tall apartment buildings where we have people living above or below us. But Habitat 67 is very different to most apartment

look like a big children's puzzle! Build in 1967, its apartments all have a

terrace with amazing views over the city.





Al-BAHEA - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 111

والمالية من في عمارات سكنية طويلة حيث تعلس فوف عند تناس. الكن المنخي ثاير عن معظم العمارت السكنية إهناء 148 شقة بيده ودي الحجية ، لعن كم للأطفال: ريع شفقها في عام 1967 ، وتحتوي على تواس مع اطلالات مدهده على المديدة

### Beijing National Stadium, China

There are many amazing sports stadiums around the world, but not many are designed by artists! Chinese artist Ai Weiwei designed the Beijing National Stadium for the 2008 Olympic Games with some architects.

سادبكين الوطنب، الصين



and now 80,000 people can visit it for sports events. Most people call it the Birds Nest because it looks like a place where birds lay their eggs!

الله لعديد من الاستادات الرياضية المدهشة في جميع نحاء العالم ، ولكن عس المدر مب مصلم من ألل الفنائين! صديم الفنال الصيني أي ويوي أستاد بكين للاعب لانسب 2008 مع بعض لمهندسين السماريين, والأن مكن أن يحتمع فيه 80 لف شخص مساعدة إحراب برحيدة المساعمة الم عش لطيور لأنه يبدو وكأنه مكان تضع فيه الطيور بيضها

### Institute for Sound and Vision, the Netherlands

سمدالصوت والرؤية ، مولندا

The architects of this museum like color! The building of the Institute for Sound and Vision is made of hundreds of colored pieces of glasses. Opened in 2006, the museum teaches you all about the media, including television.



ad the text.

الماعل المعالمة المعا

بعن المهندسية السعمة دون لهذا المتحف الألون الزائدة معهد عمود بروية مصدوع من منات النفطع الرحاء المذهر المعمل بول لهذا المتحق الأسون المتحف بعثمت أن حي عدر و حدر، لأعلام ، بما في ذلاب المنزيون, الاذاعة والصحف ووسائل التواصل الاحتماعي.



# Unit How wellse on world Niagara Falls, USA and Canada unit, the students talk about natural resources, and renewable and non-renewable resources. \*understand a play about finding dinosaur bones. •make sentences and questions using the second conditional. describe resources in ancient Egypt and do a quiz. \*understand a story about a blind girl and describe the physical properties of objects. \*understand a description of a science experiment. \*write a report about a visit to a place and develop a topic using facts. definitions, and details. \*understand a story about an experiment. \*use reported speech.

# Lesson (1)

### **NATURAL RESOURCES**

Look, listen and read.



methane (gas)



stone (solid)



soil (solid)

كوية



cloud (gas)



waterfall (liquid)



water (figurd)



solid

liquid

gas







# Natural Resources الموارد الطبيعية

### Renewable

### Non-renewable

#### منحددة

the sun	لشمس
wind	200
water	هاء

### غبر متجددة

coal	أوحم
jas	غاز
netal	مار مادن
stone	, Jan.
vood	بشخ
soil	الدية الزراعية

-J.

#### Extra vocabulary

Marsa Alam	المذيبة ماسي عبم	materials	1 0.4	pan	c
journey	The second secon	mine	منجم	sign	
freezer	حهاز التجميد (ف بزر)	object	شيء ،	state	
holiday	<b>بج</b> ازة	shape	شكل	steam	
electricity	ا کنیرہ،	pale color	ور ناهب	gold	
difference	اختلاف ـ فوق	container	وعاء	candy	

#### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs مسطمه

	Present	Past	P.P
melt		melted يدوب	melted
boil		boiled يغلي	boiled
turn		turned بنجون	turned
pick up		picked up بلتقص	picked up
heat		heated بسحن	heated
burn	4	burned / burnt بحرق - بحثق	burned/burn
pour		poured بصب	poured
flow		flowed بندفق - بسیل	flowed

116 Unit (3) How we use our world

Help your child identify these words. الكلمات. هذه الكلمات. 100°40°11 (1)

#### Treguer wibs

prese	nt Past	рр
(reeze	froze بجمد رينجمد built بين	frozen
build understand	w understood	understood
perinitions nations	things we can use from natur	re, I ke wood and so
<sup>11</sup> N 12	a place where we get raw ma	aterials from the ground
ce 5.6.1.14.	things that come from the gro	ound, like gold and coal
letewable	means we can get more afte	r we use it
nor-renewable	means we can't use it again	غير منجددة
a solid	has a fixed shape	بادد مينية
d Gald	doesn't have a fixed shape a	and it flows
d jas	doesn't have a fixed shape a	and you can't see it

#### Important expressions and prepositions

look out at	ينظرمن	fixed shape	شكل ثابت
turn from to	يتحول من إلى	fossilfuels	وقود جدري
journey to	رحنة إلى	Sukan gold mine	سعم اسكري لشهب
<sup>solar</sup> energy	الطاقة الشمسية	getwarm	يسعن

Help your child Identify these words.

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 117

سعد طعنك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات

11 - wanter

#### Listen and read.

Salma's

(a) 11. 180 Alani

It's summer and Salma and her family are going to

Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car

Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car

window and sees a sign to the Sukari gold mine. "What's

window and sees a sign to the Sukari gold mine. "What's

a mine,mom?"she asks. "It's a place where we get raw materials from the

ground, like gold and coal."

بلية النام الله الله الماد المنظم الله المنظم المنظم المنطقة المنظم والمن المنظم المنطقة المن

"Yes, usually," says Mom. "Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. For example, we use wood to make tables, stone to build houses, and plant for food. The sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy make electricity."

المنافعة ال

"Our teacher says that coal is non-renewable, is that right?"

"Yes," says Mom. "Some natural resources like so ar energy are renewable-the means that we can get more of the resource naturally after we use it. But some natural resources are non-renewable. When we burn fossil fuels such as coal and gas, we can't use them again."

Help your child read about natural resources. الطبيعية أن يقرأ عن الموارد الطبيعية.

عرا داره باشدهای

### Lesson (1)

What's the difference between coal and gas?"

asks salma.

"Coal is a solid," says Mom. "You can pick up

"Coal is a solid, base Mom. "You can pick up

a solid object, like your bag. It has a fixed

a solid object, like your bag. It has a fixed

shape. You can't usually see gases, although

some have a pale color. Gases move and

change shape.""What about liquids, Mom?"



"Liquids don't have a fixed shape. You can't pick up a liquid which isn't in a container. Liquids can flow- for example, you can pour water into a cup.

ب مشو شرق بي نبحه و نفار" نسول رأم "منحم مسها" "بيكننه القداط جسم صلب، مثل حقيبتن ب سكر ثبت لا يسكننه العازات وتعير شكلها!" تقوز سدى عاد عار نسواس بين " نشول لاه " بسوال ليس لها شكل مايت. لا يمكنك التقاط سامل غير موجود في وعاء، يسكر سدى حاد عار سامل حير موجود في وعاء، يسكر حاس حاس حاس حاس حاس عادى عود

Did you know that some solids, liquids, and gases can change from one state to another?" says Dad.

"If you boil liquid water, it turns to steam which is a gas. If you freeze liquid water, it turns to ice which is a solid. When ice melts, it becomes a liquid again!"

"Yes, we learned that at school!" says Salma. "But I understand it better now. Thanks, Mom and Dad!"

ب من مواد عدلته ولسوس و تعرف بنكن أن تنغير من حالة إلى احرد؟ الإقاف تعن العام وهو عال الا فمت بنجميد السان ، فينه يتحول إلى ثنج صبب عدما يدوب الجعيد، مورد تعدما يدوب الجعيد، عدم دلك يشكن فنجل الآن، شكرا ، الواد

# **General Activities**

بالتكاا فإلى بعا والعرباء

	the confe	ct answer from a, b	, C, or d
			foral
Salma's family a     Luxor	b) Aswan	-\ Marsa Alam	idilla i
Salma looks out     a) car	b) bus	c) taxi	d) train Window
3 Salma sees a si a) silver	gn to the Sukan 5) gold	c) bronze	d) metal
4. Mine is a place	where we get		materials
a) gas	b) solid	c) raw	d) row
2 Read and con	mplete the dial	og with words fron	n the box.
mir	ie - Marsa Alam	ı - Can - What - Wh	en
Mona Hello,	Salma. Where o	did you go for a holic	day?
Salma I went	to 1)	a, a 45445 b b+ +E+	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
Mona 2)		7 5 T	did you see?
Saima I saw t	the Sukari gold		
	u enjoy your ho		
	ery much.		
Mona 41		1 go w	vith you next time
Salma Yes, ye	ou can.	Ŭ	Ź
3 Choose the c	orrect answer	from a, b, c, or d.	
1. Solids, liquids, a	ind gases can c	hange from one	to anoth
a) state	b) star	c) base	d) type
2. When we		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	r, it turns into stea
a) freeze	b) boil	c) melt	d) drink
3. A		o, mon	, flo
a) liquid	b) gas	o) onlin	d) stone
4. If you	, 4	c) solid	d) stone
a) burn	taj boil	· · W	ater, it turns into
•		c. heat	d) freeze
20 Unit (3) How we use	Our world	Help your child deal w	ith such questions. منك أن بتعامل مع مثل هذه الأستا
		.4	المع مثل هذه الإسئا

#### Lesson (1) , Sleam is a b) gas c) liquid a) solid d water 6 Ice is a b) stone liquid a) solid QdS you can pick up a b) gas a) liquid C) Solid di steam B. Solids have a . . shape b) fixed a) changed s running melted When you freeze water, it turns from a liquid to a b) solid d) cloud c) steam a) gas 10. Gold and coal are materiais. b) row c) liquid d) gas a) raw to make tables 11. We use ...... d) water b) cotton ci wood a) paper fuels like coal and gas 12. We can burn d) silver b) fast c gold a) fossil don't have a fixed shape b) Gases c) Tables d) Chairs a) Solids Read and complete the text with words from the box stream - boiled - froze - ice - steam In science class today, our teacher put some water in a pan. She Some of the water turned to heated the water unt'l it 1) . Then we poured the water into a container, and put it in a freezer. The water 3) ...... and turned to 41 6, Order the words to make correct sentences 1. fixed - A solid - shape - has - a - . 2. solar - The sun - us - gives - energy - . 3. boil - you - When - water, - turns -it - steam- to - . ICP

### 6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

A mine is a place where we get raw materials from the ground gold and coal. Natural resources are things we can use from nature wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. For example we use wood to make tables, stone to build houses, and plants for food the sun is a natural resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity.

Some natural resources like solar energy are renewable - this means that we can get more of the resource naturally after we use it. But some natural resources are non-renewable. When we burn fossil fuels such at coal and gas, we can't use them again.

	of the text is about		
a) natural resor	urces b) the sun	c) stone	d) energy
2	I seminately on 4 on white elements	I distantial tit one sees a lie o	is a raw materia
a) Gold	b) Water	c) Ice	d) Wind
The sun is a			resource
a) normal	<sub>b)</sub> natural	c) nature	d) wind
Answer the folio	owing questions.	•	,
What does the un	nderlined pronoun ",	" refer to?	

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

5. Why are fossil fuels non-renewable?

Natural resources

Guiding elements:

( renewable - non-renewable - sun - wind - fossil fuels - solar energ

# ession (2)

### LANGUAGE









shovel
0 + 6/20

dig بحقر

hole حفرة

bones عصم

### Extra vocabulary

mountain	
dinosaur	
expert	
archaeologists	-
real	





#### Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

	Present	Past	P.P
imagine	٠	imagine d بتخيل ۽ ينصور	imagine
decide		decide d بفرد	decide u
plan		planned بحنتك	planned
stay		stayed بقيم / بيقي	stayed
miss	•	missed بفنقد / يغونه	missed
Move		)ಕ್ಕಾ / ಖ್ಯಂದಿ <b>move</b> ರ	move 0

Irregular verbs

γĺ

	Present	Past	P.P.
dig		dug يحتر	dug
tell		told بخبر	told
9ive		gave يعض	given

Help your child identify these words.

AI-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 123

ن محد

DOI

1

D

### essions and prepositions Exist talk to

nte.	SSIOTIS
Important expre	
: the ground	
take ome	
the sign	
a day	يولوكن عفيده

plan to حد. س ا سی سافید listen ا move to give to look !۱۱ استعنت بالبيولومي سيدي

interested in Egyptian Geological Museum

Scene 1: Inside a room in Grandpa's house سيهد 1، داخل غرفه في منزل الجد

What are you doing tomorrow, children? الحد ماد ستععلون غد بالطفال؟ Grandpa

Tarek and lare going into the mountains mia with Dad.

. ما: ساذهب أنا وطارق إلى الجبال مع ب.

Really? When I was a boy, people told Grandpa

me that there were dinosaur bones in the mountains.

عد:حف؟ عددما كنت صبياء أحبري الناس أن هناك عظام ديناصور في الجبال. الله:عطام ديمامهور حقيقبة؟

Ithink so. I never saw them, but my friend Ali was digging a hole ITE Grandpa

there and he found some bones.

الجد: أطن دلك. لم أرهم فعذ، لكن صديقي علي كان محمر حفرة هناك ووجد بعص العظام

Wow! Donia, let's take a snovel when we go to the mountains.

We might find dinosaur bones too!

سارق. واوا دنيا ، ندحد جاروف سدما نذهب إلى الجبال. قد نجد عظام الديناصورات أبضا! السسمة 2: عاب السيارة

Scene 2: In the car

What would you do if we found dinosaur bones in the mountains, Donia?

١٠٠ سار سمعين د وحدد عصم الديماسورات في تحدل بادنيا؟ : If we found dinosaur bones, I would take them home. If there were a lot of dinosaur bones, I would give one to Grandpa. Hels Sma very interested in dinosaurs!

124 Unit (3) How we use our world

Help your child read and listen to the play. مع طفلك أن يغوأ ونستمع إلى المسرحيه . ، ، ، اذا كن هناك الكثير من عطم الليناصورات، فسأعطى

Hmm. I don't know. I think we should call an expert. If I found dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them

م المنافق بحيين إذا وجنت عصم ديناصوره فساتصل بالمنحف وأحد هم

That's a good idea. And if the archaeolog.sts from the museum came, maybe they would find a whole dinosaur skeleton 110

الرة حمدة. ولا حاء علماء الأثار من المتحف ، فريما يجدون هيكل عظمي كامل لديناصور.

And if the skeleton went in the museum, they would put our names on the sign. It would say "Found by Donia and Tarek."

سع الهبكل العظمي في المتحف ، فإنهم سيصعون أسمائنا على اللافتة. فقد يكون مكتونًا علمها وحدت من ويل دنيا وطارق!

: Wow! That's cool. onia

1, 1

المداراتين

gene 3: In the mountains

هـ 3: في انجيال

Here's the shovel. Let's start digging. nonia

المالي المالية الحدا

1 son digs in the ground.

نارق يحفر في الارض.

Look! I've found a bone, Donia! Is it a dinosaur bone? Mel

تمرى بعد وحدث عظمه بالدنيا! هل في عظم ديماصور؟

I don't think they're heavy enough to be dinosaur bones. They're Don.3 just animai bones...Maybe a goat or gazelle.

عمده الها تضيبه بما تكثي بمكون عطام ديناصور. إنها مجرد عظام حيوانات... ربما عازة أو غزال

You're right. I've never seen a dinosaur bone in real life. Only Total photos!

ب على حق. لم از قط عظم ديناصور في الحياة الحقيقية. صور فقط!

Well, why don't we visit the Egyptian Geological Museum in Dad Cairo soon?

حسنا ، تمادا لا نرور المبحف لمصري الحيولوجي في القاهرة قوينا؟

If we go to the museum, we'll see really big dinosaur skeletons. Dona

دا دهمنا إلى المتحف، فسترى هياكل عظمية كبيرة للديناصورات.

If we see real dinosaur skeletons, we'll know what to look for next 1 111 time. Can we go tomorrow, Dad?

ابنا هياكل عظمية حقيقية للديناصورات، فسنعرف ما الذي نبحث عنه. في المرة القادمة هل بمكتبا الدّهاب عداً با أيَّ،



#### First Conditional

Form:

If + present simple , will + inf.

#### Usage:

#### We use the first conditional:

op To describe events which will probably happen in the future.

و مريد من الدولي لوصف أحداث من المحتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل

We will seedinosaur bones ifwe go to the museum.

#### Second Conditional

Form:

If + past simple, would + inf.

#### Usage:

#### We use the second conditional:

To describe events we imagine, but probably won't happen.

سعدم الحالة الشرطعة الثانية لوصف أحداث نتخيلها ولكن من المحتمل ألا تحدث

(1) Ifit snowedin October, I would be very surprised.

I would be very surprised lift snowed in October.

#### Note:

The commais important when we start with (1).

126 Unit (3) How we use our world

Help your child learn the first and the second المراطقة الأولى والثانية. . . conditionals

Choose the correct answer from and, c, or a. 1. If I saw a lion in the street, I b) would a) will be afraid. c) can d) may 2. If it in October, I would be very surprised. b) snows a) snow c) snowed d) snowing a fire, my parents would call the fire service. 3. If we b) sees c) saw a) see d) seeing 4 If we go to the museum, we see really big dinosaur skeletons. b) could a) would c) might d) will dinosaur bones, I would call the museum and tell them. 5 H1 b) found c) finds a) find d) finding 6. If I found a phone on the ground, I ... take it to the police. b) may c) can a) will d) would a famous person, I wouldn't know what to say. 7 If 1 b) meets c) met d) meeting a) meet 8. If we go to the shopping mall on Saturday, I buy a new book. bluow, (d c) could d) might a) will 9. If she much money, she'll help the poor. b) has c) had d) having a) have play tennis if we had free time. 10. We d) may c) would b) can a) will Read and complete with the correct form. (would)buy a villa. 1.If I have a lot of money, I Continuously play well, I wouldn't win the match. 2 If L (13Ke) medicine, she will recover. 3.If she (will) meet my friends. <sup>4.</sup>If I went to the park, I (catches/the train if I don't run. 5.1 won't (Will)get ill. <sup>6.</sup>If you eat healthy food, you (have lenough time, I'd play with my brother. 7.161 Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 127 Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

## digging - shovel - mountains - bones - spoon

Grandoa What are you doing tomorrow, children? Don a

We're going into the 1)

Really? When I was a boy, they told me that there were Grandpa

Tarek Real dinosaur bones?

in the mountains Grandpa I think so. I never saw them, but my friend Ali was 3). a hole there and he found some bones. Tarek

Wow! Donia, let's take a 4) . . .

when we go to the mountain,

#### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

		LI CEL GIIZMEL ILOU	na, b. c. or d	
1.	There were dinos	sauc	, a, e, or u.	
	My friend Ali was	b) bones	c) tunes	in the mountain d) phones
	a) playing Grandpa is very	b) drinking interested	a note and he to	ound some bone d) reading
	If we go to the m	b) in useum, we'll see re	c) at	d) by
	We use a	b) skeletons	c) skill	d) .sky
6.	a) towel l play a) would	<ul><li>b) shovel</li><li>games with my fri</li><li>b) will</li></ul>	c) spoon ends if I see them	to di d) ruler n in the park toda
7	If I	W) WIII	c) could	d) might

7. If I a lot of money, I would build a home for animal a) have b) has c) had d) having

8. If I visited Cairo, I go to the Egyptian Geological Museul a) will

b) would

c) may

d) can at home

If it was very hot, I would a) stay b) stays

c) staying

d) stayed

128 Unit (3) How we use our world

Help your child deal with such quastions.

<sup>از طف</sup>ك ن يتعامل مع مض هذه الأستلة.

3

## Read the following text and answer

Last week I went on a school trip to the Egyptian Geological Museum in Cairo. I went with my classmates. We learnt a lot there. We saw really big in Calro. The museum is fantastic. The guide told us interesting dinosaurs. We spent a nice time there. We took a lot of photos. We came back home at eight o'clock.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, D, Cord

- 1. We went on a school trip
  - b) tomorrow c) last week a) yesterday ast month
- 2. We came back home at o'clock. b) 7 c) 6 d) 8
- 3. I went to the Egyptian Geological Museum with my
- a) friends b) classmates c) family d) parents B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What did you see there?
  - 5. How is the museum?

### 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1. going They are the to mountains .
- 2. would do What you you if a bike had -?
- 3. bones I some dinosaur found .

### Write a text of (1) (1) words about:

### A trip to the Egyptian Geological Museum

### , <sup>Guiding</sup> questions:

- · Where did you go? - How did you go?
- · Who did you go with? - What did you see?
- · How did you find it? - When d d you come back home?
- Help your child deal with such questions.

# Lesson (3) RESOURCES IN ANCIENT EG

#### Key vocabulary

economy	الاقتصاد	fertile	
flax	نبات الكتان (خيوط الكتان)	linen	ψώ
bend		papyrus	يري

#### Extra vocabulary

mud	طين	successful	
agriculture	الزراعة	medicine	
jewelry	مجوهرات ا	mines	
copper	أحاس	tools	
cooking pots	أواق الطهى	limestone	ياري
temples	معابد	hieroglyphics	والهيروغليفية
forests	غابات	problems	
bricks	قولب طوب	the Eastern Desert	راء <b>الشرقية</b>
hives	خلاما النحل	The Nile Delta	افيل

#### · Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

	Present	Past	P.P
flood		flood ed يفيض	flooded
turn		turn ed يتحول	turn ed
die ,	•	die d	died
discover		discover ed یکتشف	discover <sup>ed</sup>
transport		transport ed ينقل	transport ed

### Lesson (3)

pregular ver

H.C.	present	, Pas	t P.P.
e?		<u></u> sold	sold
seli		kept	kept
keep build		پ built °	built
bend		bent ينتي مدوي	bent

#### Important or processions and preposition is

(1111)			
work at	يعمل في	such as	
as well as	بالاصافة إلى	useful in	معید ق
at first	ق البدالة	get out of	حرج من
take from	بإحد من		

#### Listen and read.

Hello, my name's Mr Taha and I work at the museum. Iknow your class is learning about natural resources, so I'm here today to talk about resources in ancient Egypt!

حب عبر المن در والمناعمل في هالاس العبر العبر المناطقة ا

Did you know that ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources? Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of ancient Egypt. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile. Farmers grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice.

علم الراعة والمفايمة كانت تاجعة للغاية لأنها كانت تمثلك موارد طسعية جمده داست الراعة وزاعة والمعالمة التراعة في الأن كل عاد وحمل التربية في المالية المالية

Do any of you know what flaxis? This tall plant has blue flowers. The plant turns yellow after the flowers die. Flax was important in ancient Egypt. People used it to make linen for clothes, as well as for strong rope.

و نبات لكتان؟ هذا ننبات الصوبي له زهور زرق، بتحول النبات إلى النون الاصعر وكذلك على الدارية مصر التدارية المناخذة الداري لصنع الملاس، وكذلك على





Salt was also a very important resource in ancient Egypt,

and they sold it to other countries, too, People used salt to keep food fresh. It was also useful in medicine and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile Delta had lots of salt which people could take to use or sell.

على الملح أيضا موردا مهما جدا في مصر القديمة, وباعوه إلى بلدان أحرى أيضا ، 'ستحدم الناس المنح لنحماظ عني الطعام والملع المساوية المسافي الطب و الرزاعة. تعمل البحيرات في دلتا النيل بها الكثير من العلع الذي يسكن أن بخذه العاس به كال مفسد المصافي الطب و الرزاعة.

Pictures of life in ancient Egypt often show jewelry and beautif objects made from gold! We think they discovered gold about 5,00

ه و تظهر صور الحدة في ديسا المديدة محوهرات و سياء جيريلة مصلوعة من الذهب! بعنف أنهم اكتشفوا الذهب منذ

At first, they found it in rivers, then they made mines to get more out of the ground. Archaeologists have discovered some ancient gold mines in the Eastern Desert.

سابة، وجدوه في الأنهار، ثم استخدموا المناجم للحصول على المزيد من الأرض. اكتشف علماء الآثار بعض مناجم

Copper was another very important metal. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots. and knives, as well as jewelry. We can see a lot of these objects today in Egyptian museums.

العاس معدد آجر مهم حدا. كان من البسهن ثنته وتشكيله، واستخدمه الناس في صبع لأدوات وأوابي الطهي والسكاكين عالمعوه, الله مكدر أن توى الكثير من هذه الأشياء النوم في المتاحف المصرية.

Finally, stones and rocks were a useful natural resource in ancient Egypt, too. Because there were lots of rocks such as limestone, the ancient Egyptians could build the pyramids, and many other big and important buildings and temples. Boats on the Nile transported some of the stones across Egypt to the important cities.

عبري – عبران والصغور مورد طبيعي مفيد في مصر القديمة, نظرا لوجود لكثير من الصحور مثل الحجر لجبري المديمة المدي المكن المصريس العدمة بداء الاهرامات والعديد من المباني والمعدد الكبيرة لمهمه الأحرى. نقلت عوارب في نهر بعض الحجارة عير مصر إلى المدن انمهمة.

attrace in ancie

Lesson (3)

### The much do you know about of her natural resources in ancient Egypt? Do the quiz.

كم تعرف عن الموارد الطبيعية الأخرى في مصر القديمة؟ قم بحل اللغز.

#### WHAT IS IT?

Egyptians used this to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples which show people keeping bees.

استخدم المصريون هذا لصنع الدواء. كان من المهم جدا للمساعدة في مشاكل الجلد أو العيون. هذاك كدارات هيروعليفية في المعابد لقبيمة لتي نظهر للناس تربية ستحل.

a salt

b honey

**c** milk

People used this strong plant to make things such as baskets and sandals, but the most important thing they made from it was paper. The . ancient Egyptians made some of the first books in the world using this

استجدم الناس هذا النبات نقوي لصنع أسياء مثل السلال والصنادل ، بلان أهم شيء فينعوه منه كان الورق. فيم المصريون القدماء بعص بكتب لأولى في العالم باستخدام هذا.

a papyrus

**b** dates

c fax

This natural resource wasn't easy to find in ancient Egypt because there weren't many forests. People could get it from other countries.

للا تجراض للمهن لعلم إلى هذا الله إلى تعديقي في مصر العديمة ويه لم تكن هفات الجدو من العداب المكن للناس الحصول عليه من طدان أخرى.

a stone

b sand

C wood

People in ancient Egypt used this to build houses and other buildings. They took it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These were hard and strong when they dried.

استخدم الناس في مصر المن المدال المدال والمبني الأخرى. أخذوه من النبي عمده كان لمذًا وصنعها سمه طوب بادع سمل سابح بسالا فيند وقاي غثلما يجف

a mud

b gold

c coal

Help your child do the quiz.

AI-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 133

الأسانة مع مثل هذه الأسانة.

Lesson (3)

### Read the following text and answer and answe

- Jople kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt over 4,500 years Honey was an expensive but important natural resource. Everyone ago. Horrey ago it because you could use it for many different things. People used it to liked it pecause sweet. They used it as a medicine, too If you cut yourself, you could put honey on the cut.

people made long, round houses out of clay for the bees. Then they the clay bee houses, called hives, on top of each other in the shape of apyramid. Every few months, they moved the hives along the Nile in boats so that the bees could find new flowers.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or a.

- 1. The main idea of the text is the
  - a) pyramid b) honey
    - c) money Nile
- 2. Bees live in houses called
  - a) hotels b) flats
- c) hives holes

- 3. Honey wasn't
  - a) expensive b) cheap
- c) important
- useful

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. How did people use honey as a medicine?
- 5. Why did people move the hives along the Nile?

#### Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1. flooded the soil fire Nile fertile made and
- 2. used flax People make to linen .
- 3. Egypt very : nerent successful was

### Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about

Honey

### **Guiding elements:**

( bees - food - sweet - medicine - cut - flowers )

#### Key vocabulary

soft	فاعم / لين / طوي	mass	
	قاس / جامد	light	· ·
hard sticky	الاصق / لاج	heavy	A.
rough	خشن	comfortable	QQ.
gas	غاز	odor	, es
liquid	سائل	texture	رائعة الماس / تسييج / فعاش
solid	هلب	blind	ر کفیف

#### Extra vocabulary

excited	متحمس اعسرور	stone		,945
lovely	جميل	smooth	,	سلم / إماس
fingers	أصابع انيد	amazing	•	بنغل
object	شيء	kitchen		بطبخ
wooden	خشبي	honey		يبل
carefully	بحرص / بعدية	kind		وع

#### **Definitions**

blind	can't see	عد/كفيف
odor	the smell of something	420,
Mass	describes how heavy something is	كيه
farful	enthis is the feel of something	العمس.

Conjugation of verbs (regular vero)	Conjugation of verbs	Regular verbs
-------------------------------------	----------------------	---------------

Present	Past	P.P
arrive	arrived	arrived
pick	picked بتنط	picked
close	closed سق	closed
touch	touched يلمس	touched
136 Unit (3) How we use our world	Help your child ide	entify these words. لفلك أن يتموف على هذه الكلمات

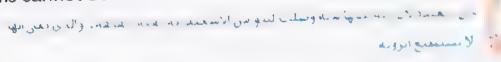
	present	Past	P.P
		meant یمی / بقصد	meant
<sub>ae</sub> an		came یانی	come
nean come		said يقول	said
say	•	felt يشعر / له ملمس	felt
teel		knew يعرف	known
know		smelt يشم	smelt
know		bent يثني - ينوي	bent
bend		ecions and propositions	

### Important expressions and prepositions

litiba		mand it		حبد ق
t a from	يعمل هن ۱۰۰	good at		_
arrive from	مرحياتك في	learn from		غملم من
welcome h	ينجول حول	ask for		عملي
walk around	ببله فمثقا	play with		نعب مع
sounds (C)	يُحيّر من	put down	4	e.man
getfrom ping-pong ball	كرة بلس الطاولة			
F T	A			

#### Listen and read.

Mona is excited because her cousin Heba has just arrived from Alexandria. Heba is blind, which means she cannot see.



"Hello, Heba. Come in!" says Mona. "Welcome to my house. This is the living room." Heba walks around the room and feels some of the things. "It's a lovely room," she says. "How do you know?" asks Mona.

سد . هوان، إنها حافة حمدته فسانها متي "كيف يمكنك أن يعرقي؟"

"Well, when you run your fingers over an object, you can feel its to the So, I know that you have soft, comfortable chairs. And I like your old

Help your child read a story about a blind girl.
عدد طمئك أن يفرأ قنية عن فتاة كفيهة

AI-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 137

wooden table." "How do you know it's old and wooden?"
"The old wood is rough, and it has an old, too. That means I can shell

ما اعتلما تدور أصابها على شيء ما ديمكنت الاسف المسلب الدان ، عندان در من بالمساب المان على المان در من بالمساب المسم حسل المسلب المسلم حسل المسلم حسل المسلم حسل المسلم حسل المسلم حسل المسلم المسلم حسل المسلم المسل

"Heba picks up a ping pong ball, "And I know this is a ball and not a stone because of its mass. It's light, but a stone is heavy,"

"You're amazing, Heba!" says Mona. "I'd love to learn more."



"We can play a game. First, I'll ask Aunt Leila to get me some things from the kitchen. You mustn't look! Then, close your eyes. Can you tell me what the things are?"

"That sounds fun!" says Mona's mother. She puts some things down on the table.

المكت راضعات ما الازال الدياسات الميلة ماي رائجيم والعلم الأسداس للشلخ العلم الارتبياي بها للمصى ملليات هاي الديار الارتال الاستاداء الكول والدعامان عليا يتدو للملغ اللها لطع لعقل لاستاء علي الطاولة.

Mona closes her eyes. First, she picks up a soft banana. "It's not hard," says Mona. "I can bend it, and it has an odor. Is it a banana?"

"Yes!" says Heba. "Now touch this carefully "Oh, it's soft and smooth, and it's sticky. Is it honey?" asks Mona. "That's right! You're good at this game, Mona!"

شون هذه العيمان الذي المدن هذه بعداية القوامي المدين التواقع من المدين المور هذه العدد ال

"Thanks, Heba. I know that I'll learn a lot from you while you're here!"
"I'm sure I'll learn a lot from you, too!" says Heba.

" را با هبة. أعلم التي ساتعدم منك الكثير الناء وجودك هنا!" القود هنة "أنا مناكدة من التي ساتعلم الكثير منك ايضا! "

Help your child read a story about a blind girl. سعد طفنك أن يفرأ قصة عن فتاة كفيفة.

### Lesson (4)

# Ciphysical properties &

physical property

Letter : .....

1 1

mass

solid

sticky

comfortable

Look and read about the physical propert end and about the physical properties are properties are properties and about the physical properties are properties are properties and physical properties are properties are properties are propert



It's a so id, it's hard, it's made of You can't bend it. You can sit on it.



- It's a gas, It's in the air, It doesn't have a People need this.



- It's a solid. It's soft, You eat it. It's very cold. If it gets warm, it



it onto food or you You can lt's a 📁 , lt's can cook with it.



, and it's You see it when lt's a 🔻 . It has you



You drink it or cook with it. ∈ i It's It's a You can add it to coffee.

### General Activities

باتكا فياله يخا والمتاب الم

Listen and	choose the corre	ect answer from	Try or er
<ol> <li>Mona and Ha</li> <li>a) living roor</li> <li>Mona's</li> <li>a) father</li> <li>Heba asks Mor</li> </ol>	b) kitchen	c) garden got someth c) brother	d) bedroom ning from the kitchen d) aunt
4. Mona picks up		v c) her eyes	d) her hands
a) guava	, ,	c) tomato	d) banana
2 Choose the	correct answer f	rom $a,b,\epsilon,$ or $\epsilon$ .	
1. "		" means a p	erson who can't see
<ul><li>a) Deaf</li><li>2. The smell of so</li></ul>	b) Dumb mething is its	c) Blind	d) Weak
<ul><li>a) door.</li><li>3. Glue feets</li></ul>	b) odor	c) mass	d) texture
<ul><li>a) rough</li><li>4. The elephant has</li></ul>	b) hard as a large	c) sticky	d) stick
a) mass 5. Oxygen is a	b) odor	c) texture	d) smell
<ul><li>a) solid</li><li>Olive oil is a</li></ul>	b) liquid	c) gas	d) soft
a) solid 7.	b) gas	c) liquid	. It's yellow d) hard
a) Milk 8. This soft chair is	b) Steam	c) Chair	gas. It has no color d) Water
<ul><li>a) bad</li><li>Honey is sweet a</li></ul>	b) rough	c) hard	d) comfortable
a) hard  O. A chair is a solid.		c) sticky	d) rough
	b) hard	c, sticky	d) light
to Unit (3) How we use o	ur world	Help your child deal wit	,
		د الله ا	مري ومناس المراميل المراميل المدادرة

### Lesson (4)

# Read the following text and answer the questions

Mona is excited because her cousin Heba has just arrived from Alexandria. Heba is blind. She can't see. Mona welcomes Heba to her house. Alexandra around the room and feels the texture of the chairs. They are Heba The old wood is rough, and it has an odor, too. Heba picks up a ping pong ball. She knows this is a ball and not a stone because of its mass. It's light, but a stone is heavy.

lt'S	light, be	correct answer from b) blind	om a, b, c or c.
A)	Choose	Taxable to desire to the year of	1 1 6
1.	Heba 13	b) blind	c) dumb

- b) blind
- c) dumb
- d) sad

- a) deaf 2. The underlined word "exc.ted" means
  - a) sad
- b) happy
- c) funny
- d) kind

- 3. The chairs are ..... a) comfortable b) uncomfortable c) boring
- d) useless

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. Why is Mona excited?
- 5. How does the old wood feel?

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. glue - is - Tine - sticky - .

2. to - my - Welcome - house - .

3. chairs - are - What - the - like -?

#### Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: 5

# A description of a strawberry

#### **Guiding questions:**

. What color is it?

- Is it a solid or a liquid?

- Is it hard or soft?

Does it have an odor?

- What kind of texture does it have?
- Help your child deal with such questions, سرقد ولفلك أن يتعامل مسروا المداد عاد 16 .

### A SCIENCE EXPERIMENT

#### Key vocabulary

glass jar	
honey	
water	

vegetable oil

برطمان رجايي	syringe
	milk "
	maple syrup
	dish detergent

بحقتة (سريجة)
بيل
نراب القيقب
ينطف وطياي

#### Extra vocabulary

different	container مختلف
groups	sticky مجمعات
thick	layer
separate	amounts منفصل
coin	side عمية معينية
mass	slowly

بة	وعاء - حاو
ن	ازج - لاصو
	طبقة
	كميات
	جائب
	بنظاء

#### Conjugation of verbs

	Present	Past	P.P
pour		poured بصب	poured
mix		mixed بختلط / بمرح	mixed
notice	•	notice d بلاحظ	noticed
add		added بدسف	added
float		float ed بطغو	floated
wonder		wonder	wonder

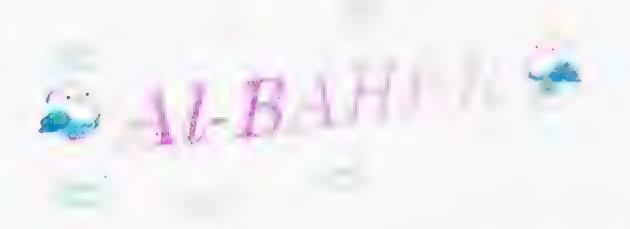
### Lesson (5)

# Bregular verbs

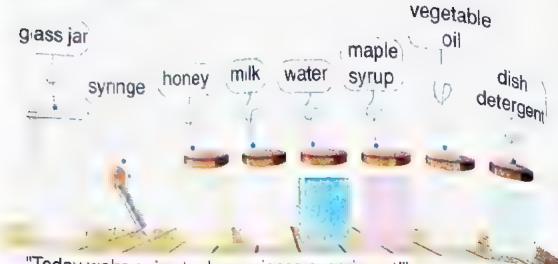
Mars	present	Past	PP
		يفعن did	done
do		sank بغوض	sunk
sink		made made	made
make		showed وصح البين	shown
show		thought	thought
think		let يسمح / يدع	let
et			

## Important expressions and prepositions

ant	mix أن يو أن mix يحري نجوية	v
doexperiment	give Out پکتشف	23
find out	pour in منطح) منظم (باعبی ، علی، سیطح)	حساق
float ontop	inthe centre بختلط ب	مبيدي
mix with		Janes
atthe end	و النهاية carry <sup>On</sup>	ال استرابط
go through	inthe first بنحب عبر (خلال)	



#### Listen and read.



"Today we're going to do a science experiment!" said Mrs Hend." What happens when we pour different liquids into one container?"

"اليوم سنقوم بتجربة علمية! قالت ميس هند. "ماذا يحدث عندما نسكب سوائل مختلفة في وعاء وإحد؟"
"I think they mix together," said Amir. " Let's find out!" said Mrs Hend.

ول أمر:" أعتقد أنها تختلط معا". قالت ميس هند "دعونا نكشف "

Mrs Hend had some small ars with these liquids: honey, milk, water, maple syrup, vegetable oil, and dish detergent. She also had some tall glass jars and a plastic syringe. She gave these out to groups of children. Then she showed them what to do.

كان لدى منس هند بعض البرضماذات الصغيرة التي تحتوي على هذه السوائل بعنس والحنب و بما و وشرب لعنقب والزنت النباق ومنصف الأطباق. كان لدنها أيضا بعض لبرطمانات الرحاجية الطويلة ومحقية بلاسليكية ورعب هذه الاسباء للمجموعات من الأطفال. ثم أوضحت لهم ما يحب القيام به.

"First, slowly pour in the honey. Don't let it touch the side of the jar". Amir and Tarek poured the honey in. It was sticky and thick. "Next, slowly pour in the maple syrup."

"أولاً؛ صب العسل ببطء. لا تدعه بلمس جانب البرطمان" سكب أمير وطارق المسل فيه. كان لزجًا وسميكًا، "بعد ذاءً"، مبب ببطء في شرب القيمب."

Amir and Tarek noticed that the maple syrup wasn't as thick as the honey. When they poured it, the syrup made a layer on top of the honey. 'Look!" said Tarek " It didn't mix with the honey. It's on top."

لاحض أمر وطارق أن شراب القيقب لم يكن سميكا مثل العسل. عندما سكبوء، كوَن الشراب طبقة قوق العسل. قال طارق "انظرا لم يختلط مع العسل، أنه على القمة."

### Lesson (5)

the syringe to put your milk slowly on top of the syrup, in the "Use tribe. Then do the same with dish detergent", said Mrs Hend م ما در در دور سام في د مصف دراه و السريم

Amir and Tarek added the milk. It made a white layer on top of the syrup.

مفة بنصاء أغلى لشراب

They then added the dish detergent. Then they used the syringe to make the water and vegetable oil pour down the side of the jar. Amir and Tarek carried on adding liquids in very slowly. At the end, their jar had six separate layers in.

. عدفوا سطف الأخال من معتموا حقية تحفل الماء والزيت النياتي ينساب على جوانب المرطعان. سامر مير وصارق في صدفة السوال بنظم شديد. في النهاية ، كان بالبرصمان سبت طبقات منفصلة

"Well done!" said Mrs Hend." Why do you think that happened?" "Is it because there are different amounts of the liquids?" asked Amir.

الرام الأراب المراجع المناطق المراجع ا ال هجاء نجمات محتلفة من السواس؟

"No, Amir, We had the same amount, but the liquids all have a different mass. The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top!"

در بعيد بنس تكميه ، لكن السواس جميعها لهاكتلة مختلفة. تغوص السوائل الأثقل في القاع.

#### Look and tick.

he light sinks floats Object

a coin

a ping pong ball

a tomato

a button

a stone

honey

an eraser

Help your child read about a science experiment. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن تجربة علميه

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 145

#### - THEFT WILDISTS

# 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

### mix - do - experiment - pour - did

Amir  Amir  Yes, I d What a I'm goir What h a conta Tarek Amir  Amir  Let's fir OK.	re you going to 1 ng to do a science appens when we liner? hey 4) nd out!	<b>e</b> 2)	different liquids into
Choose the correct answer from , , , or .			
<ol> <li>Today we're going</li> <li>a) play</li> <li>We pour different</li> </ol>	b) do t liquids into a	c) make	a science experiment d) eat
a) bag	b) container	c) paper	d) carpet
<ul><li>3. Mom uses dish</li><li>a) detergent</li><li>4. Honey is</li></ul>	b) agent	c) determi	to wash the dishes. ne d) honey
a) solid	b) hard	C) etiplos	and thick
on top of the syrup.			
a) foam 6. Doctors use a		c) layer	d) bar with patients.
a) needle	b) syringe	c) range	d) ruler
7. Milk is a a) gas	b) solid	c) liquid	d) water
8. Heavy objects			to the bottom
a) float	b) sink	c) think	d) fly
<ul><li>9. If you put an eras</li><li>a) sinks</li><li>10. I'd like to drink ma</li></ul>	b) flies	c) thinks	d) floats
a) food	b) syrup	c) oil	d) honey
146 Unit (3) How we use (	r		al with such questions.  ماند طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأستلة.

# Lesson (5)

3

# Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Ali. I'm in primary five. I walk to school. I go to school five a week. I like science a lot. It's a very interesting subject. Today we're going to do a science experiment! What happens when we pour different liquids going to container? They mix together. Liquids have a different mass. The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Ali goes to school
  - b) by bus a) by car
- c) by train
- d) on foot

d) think

- 2. Ali goes to school
  - a) 3
- c) 5
- times a week. d) 6

- 3. The heavier liquids

- c) float
- to the bottom.

- b) sink a) fly B) Answer the following questions.
- 4 What are they going to do today?
- 5. Why does Ali like science a lot?
- 4 Order 🐪 ampress to make correct sentences.
- 1. is Honey sticky thick and ,
- 2. sink The liquids bottom heavier the to .
- $^3$ . are water Milk liquids and .
- 5 Write a NORE of FIFTY (50) words about:

### A science Experiment

# **Guiding elements:**

(science - coin - liquid - put - sink - mass )

help your child deal with such questions.

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 147

ساغد طفيك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

# Lesson (6)

### MKILLING Y LIE OH

# Key vocabulary

waterfalls نقق ' waterfalls

flamingo البشروس /طانر العلامنجو coastline

## Extra vocabulary

orchards صوت orchards

popular واحدة

facts history

port تفاصيل port

the Mediterranean

# Conjugation of verbs

hear المعنف heard المعنف heard المعنف heard المعنف heard travel المعنف traveled iump المعنف jumped jumped included included

### Important expressions and prepositions

go ona trip ينهب في رحلة safe to
at the bottom في القبع at the top

nave fun بمرح onvacation

It's time to... حان الوقت ل... famous for

148 Unit (3) How we use our world

Help your child identify these words.

طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

باوري

U.

# listen and read. Walli El Rayan Waterfalls oun soig winder Report by Wael Mahrl,

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two there: One at the top of the waterfalls and one at water falling is word. the sound of water falling is very loud.

We couldn't hear our teacher talking very well!

ف الاستوع الماصي ، دهب فصلنا في رحلة إلى الشلالات في وادي الريان. كان شئا جسير 

والمراجع معامنا وشو يتحكن من سماع معامنا وهو يتحدث بشكل جيد للغايه!

We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert. An casis is

aplace in the desert with water. The water travels eight Mometers from the oasis to the lake through a tunnel.

مسد ل سمون من واحدٌ في الصحراء. الواحة هي مكان في الصحواء به ماء. ينتفل المه ثمانية كبيومرات من الوحة إلى البحيره عبر نفق.

Our teacher also told us that there are a lot of different birds living there. We saw some of the birds and my favorite was the flamingo.

للامرات يستد المحللية لين تعلكن هذلك رائد تعص التقليد راوكان المعيشل لدي هو قائر

Then it was time to have some fun. We jumped into the bottom lake and went swimming. It is safe to swim there, and it helped us cool down after along day.

لم حان الوقت للحصول على بمض المتعة. فقرنا إلى البحيرة السقلية وذهبنا ليسباحة. من الامن السباحة هماك وفدساته

Your child read a report about a school trip.

AI-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 149

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ تقريرًا عن رحلة مدرسية.

#### Listen and read.

# Damietta. A report by Gameela Hassan

Damietta is a city on the Mediterranean coast of Egypt. It has a long, beautiful coastline and many people like to go there on vacation.



ياط هي عدينه على ساحل البحر الابيض المتوسط لقصر، ثها حط ساحلي طوس، وحمين ونتم عن أساس تعمون للقاف إلى هناك في الإجازة،

Ras El-Bar Is and is one of the most popular places to stay there. There are also many beautiful gardens and orchards to see. Orchards are places where fruit trees are grown. Damietta is also a busy port and an important fishing center.

حريرة رأس البر هي واحدة من اكثر الاماكن شعبية للإقامة هذك. وهنات ايضا العديد من تحداثق الجميلة والبساتين رونتها: البساتين هي الأماكن التي ترزع فيها اشجار الفاكهة، دميط عي بِصا ميناء مردحم وعركز صبد مهم

It has the largest number of fishing boats in Egypt. It is an important place for agriculture, too. Agriculture is the practice of farming. Crops such as rice, fruit, cotton, and date palm trees are grown here for the Egyptian people and also to sell to other countries.

بها أكبر عدد من قوارب الصيد في مصر، إنها مكان مهم للزرعة ايضا الورعة عن ممارسه الوراعة، تزرع المحاصين مثا إذا والقواكه والقطن واشتجار النخيل هنا للشعب المصرى والضا سلعها لي بلدان احرى

Damietta is a busy city with a famous history but it is also a beautiful modern city. I'd really like to visit Damietta one day.

. ١٠٠٠ و د- تمه ذاك مردح مسهور ولكمها أبضا مدينة جمدله وحديثة. أود حقا ربارة ترمباط يوما م

# How to write a report

You should include facts, details, and definitions about the place you visited in your report.

poresearch to make notes.

# A trip to Luxor

Guiding elements:

1. Where is the place? 2- What did you do there?

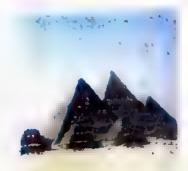
3. What things, people, or animals did you see there?

4- Why did you enjoy your visit?

# A model report

Last week, our class went on a trip to Luxor. It was beautiful. There are many temples there. Al Karnak Temple is the most famous one there. We learned about the Valley of the Kings. It was fantastic. Our teacher told us that there were a lot of things to do there. There are many ancient sites to see there. I enjoyed my trip because it was fun and interesting.

\* Look and write a report about your trip to "



Read and complete the dialog with words from the box. enfoy - flamingo - went - waterfalls - go 1. Where did your class go last week? Ami to Wadi EL-Rayan They 11 Waei What did you see there? . They are 67 meters high The 3 What birds did you see there? I saw the 3 i√3⊱1 Did you 🤄 - your trip? - (I) " Yes, we did. choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. a trip to the waterfalls of Wadi El-Rayan. Last week we went a) in d) by 5) on c) at is a place in the desert with water. A/An a) lake c) park - d) island b) oasis 3. My favorite is the flamingo. a) animal b) bird c oasis d) thing i Damietta has a long and beautiful on the Mediterranean Sea. a) animal b) bird c) pasis d) coastline In Damietta there are many beautiful gardens and to see. a) oceans b) orchards c. lakes d) buds Many people like to go to Damietta vocations. a) on d) of b) in c at city with a famous history Damietta is a

8. Agriculture is the practice of playing running swimming it farming

152 Unit (3) How we use our world Help your child deal with such questions.

c. tall

b) busy

a) lazy

d) bad

3

pamietta is a city on the Mediterranea resultful cone of the most popular places to stray the most popular places to stray the most popular places to see. Orthodological places in the most popular places to see. Orthodological places in the most popular places to see. peauliful gardens and orchards to see. Orchards trespenses or any Damietta is also a busy port and an irrorming to the part of the p has the history but it is also a beautiful model. famous history but it is also a beautiful modern only lightly like to visit pamietta one day.

# choose the correct answer from

- The main idea of the text is
  - a) Damietta b) Egypt
- c) orchards
  - d) port

- 2. Ras El-Bar island is one of the most b) popular a) funny
  - places to stay there c) expensive d) boring
- 3. Many people like to go to Damietta on
  - a) Saturday
- b) foot
- c) vacation d) a bus

- B) Answer the following questions.
- What are orchards?
- 5. What is Damietta famous for?

# Write a text of 1111 (50) words about.

#### A school trip

#### **Guiding questions:**

- -Where did you go?
- -How did you go?
- -What did you see?

- What could you do there?
  - Why did you enjoy there?

# LANGUAGE



### Read the story.

"OK, students" said Mrs Hend, "Today we're going to do a science experiment.

You can work in groups of three. There is a solid object in one box, and a container of liquid in another box. You have to study them and answer some questions."

لى الاسمادة على مسلسا فيها التعلاقي"، "ليوم سنفوم بتجرية علمية للككم العمل في معلمات المسلم العمل في معلم دراسيها والرحادة على دوس الاستد

Lara was sitting on her own, but Reem and Dina were sitting in front of her. Reem turned around and spoke to Lara" Lara, Mrs Hend said we could work in groups of three. Would you like to work with us?"

كانت لارا مجلس به ه دهه منز رسم وديما كانتا تجسمان أمامها، استدارت مده تحداثه الله الفشة " تا لاراء الرسمةة همد فالت أنه سكن ان نصب في مصموعات من فلاته، هن بودين العمل ميما

"Oh, yes please," said Lara happily. The girls sat together, and they took out their pens and notebooks. "OK" said Dina, "What do we need to do?"

قالت لارا بسعاده، " روم منعم بي قصلك"، حديد الله الدي الرابوام المدالية الدياسة قالت دينا "حسينا" المادا عدل أن تقعل "

Lara looked at her notes. "Mrs Hend said there was a solid object in one box and a container of liquid in another box." "That's right" said Reem. "She said we had to study them and answer some questions." "Great, let's get started!" said Dina.

لاً ۱۰۰ اِ الله على العصر الله عصم دعونا ببلدالاً" الم

154 Unit (3) How we use our world

Help your child read the story.

مَدْ طَفِيكَ أَنْ يَقَرَّأُ القَصِةَ.

resson (1)

# Reported speech

He said, " I play the guitar well".

He said that he played the guitar well".

# The steps

o said said to \_\_\_\_\_ told

• We omit " " and put that or (we can omit "that").

🛭 يتم تحويل الضفا - حسب المتكلم والمخاطب

رومود	الفا	horsed shearth	Mirec Speech	ضائر الم	<u> قىڭلە</u>	مفات ال
Ditett Speece			- Julia	Latitude 2 26	° + 2p + °	1711 . To
ļ	1	he / she	me	him / her	my	his / her
you	1	I / we	you	me / us	your	my / our
we	1	they	us	them	our	their

المال ما المال المال المال المال المال المال ويشي فيا

السيال دلمسا		النعبرات الزمية		क्षंत्री अम गा।	
Direct Speech R	epo led Speech	Direct Speech	here have		
this	that	today	that day	tonight	that night
these	those	tomorrow	the following day	now	then
مكان here l	th oil	yesterday	the day before	ago	before
HEIB	there	last week	the week before		

Help your child use reported speech.

Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 155

# We change the tenses like this with (said / told):

Direct Speech	Reported Speed	Direct Speech	Reported Speach
am / is	was	can	could
ате	were	will	would
have / has	had	may	might

و حویل الأرسه

#### الأزمنة

Direct Speech

Present Samble

Reported Speech

Past Simple

g Walaa said "Like English."

Walaa said that she liked English.

Meseria Continuous -

Past Continuous

e.g. Ali said to me "I am watching TV."

Ali told me he was watching TV.

Past Smiple / Past Perfect

e.g Ahmed said "I haw a bird."

Ahmed said he saw / had seen a bird.

Nocals

Past Viodais

e.g. She said "I wat travel tomorrow."

She said she and the following day.

e.g. He said "I can cwm,"

He said he could swim.

#### Choose the correct word(s). Mona said she b) likes playing tennis. a) like r: liked 2 Ali said he sometimes d) liking h) have eggs for breakfast. a) had c) having 3. Khaled said he d) has b) will SWIM. a) can c) may d) could 4. Amr said he be ready to carry things. b) will a) is c) can d) would 5. Mazen said it hot and sunny b) are c) was a) is d) can 6. Omar said, "I nde a bike " b) am a) can c) are d) have Choose the correct word(s). t. "Dina ..... animals," said Mom. a) love c) is loving d) loving 2. 11 ...... play the guitar." said Noha. b) could a) can c) am d) would Shady said Mr Ahmed in Alexandria. c) works b) working a) work d) worked cooking with her Morn. 4. Eman said she a) liking b) like c) liked d) likes Mona said it cold and rainy. a) is b) was d) were c) are 6. Aya said she to visit the park. a) want d) wanted b) wanting c) wants Read and complete with the correct form. 1.He said he swim. <sup>2</sup> She said she ay)tennis. 3.Wael (says) his favourite lesson was science. Ali said he vill)come early. <sup>5</sup> Rola said she ignito school. Help your child deal with such questions. AI-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 157

سعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة،

Lesson (7)

# **General Activities**

الكتاب نهاية الكتاب المنعاع في نهاية الكتاب

1	Listen and co	005	e the correct a	answ	ver irom a, b	, <b>C</b> <sub>1</sub>	or d.
1.	Today we're goin	g to	do a science				*
	· ·		Support 8		expert	d)	survey
2.	You can work in	. 10 4 47		*****			
	a) groups	ы	classes	c)	herds	<del>d)</del>	POXES OI (I)IO
3.	There is a				a goonocráda pámba es a	obie	ect in one box
	a) liquid	h)	colid	c)	gas	d)	steam
1	You have to stud		Solid	-/	9	90	mo e
7.	a) and	y ar		C)	dalete	d)	me questions
_	a) ask		4			uj	wonder
2	Choose the co	rre	ct answer from	n a,	b, c, or d.		
1.	Would you like to	) WO	rk		40 + 5110 7 40 +1045 1 4		II Harris Ha
	a) at						
2.	Water is a		•				dd d b tho tone
	a) solid					d)	stone
3:	He said he				= {-+ + 405( 0		olay the guita
4	a) can		could	C)			
4.	Amira said she			- \			on Monday
E.	a) go				went		_
J.	Mariam said she a) like				liked		
5	Fares said he	137	likes		oing to play fo	_	_
	a) is	b)	was	c)	has	d)	are
7.	Mona said, "I		** ** **				to the park
	a) go						
	Ziad said, "I					h -	SWIT
	a) am	b)	can	c)	had	d)	have
9.	Magdy said, "I						
10	a) needs	1	need	Cj	needed	d)	needing
TU.	Mom said it						
	a) is						
158	Unit (3) How we use o	ur w	orld	Help j	your child deal with	such	questions. عرطمان آن بتجارا

1,3550n (7)

Remarks and the same of the sa

My name is Mazen. I'm in primary five. I ike my school very much. 3 My flavorite lesson. Yesterday I went on a school trip to the science is my favorite lesson. Yesterday I went on a school trip to the science Museum. We learned a lot about the environment and saw a lot of science We enjoyed our time there. It was a vocated and saw a lot of science wild we enjoyed our time there. It was a very exciting trip. I talked to my about this visit. cass about this visit.

choose the correct answer from . . or .

Science is a

<sup>2-1</sup> food a) sport

c) subject (a) season

is Mazen's favorite lesson.

a) English

Science

Arabic

d) History

3. Mazen likes his

c) bike

very much. d) school

b) street a) club B) Answer the fellowing questions.

4 Where did Mazen go yesterday?

5 What did they learn about?

1. to - you - need - Do - a calculator - borrow - ?

2. visiting - like - I - park - the - .

3. a science - do - Lets - experiment .

4. said - it - Mem - cold - was - rainy - and - .

Write soout.

#### A visit to the museum

# **Guiding questions:**

Where did you go?

- How did you go?

Who did you go with?

- What did you see?

·Why did you enjoy the trip?

kelp your child deal with such questions.

AI-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 159

# Writing Corner!

# Vatural resources

Natural resources are things we can use from nature, like wood and soil. We use them to make the things we need. We use wood to the sun in tables, stone to build houses, and plants for food. The sun is a hatur resource because it gives us solar energy to make electricity Some natural resources are renewable, but other natural resources non-renewable such as coal and gas.

# a sin inclent compt

Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natura resources. Agriculture was a very important part of the economy of anger Egypt. The Nile flooded every year and made the soil fertile. Farmes grew lots of different crops, such as cotton and rice. They used flaxt make linen for clothes. Stones and rocks were useful natural resources ancient Egypt. They could build the Pyramids and temples.

#### Honey

Egyptians used honey to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphia in ancient temples which show people keeping bees. Honey was a expensive but important natural resource. People used it to make fool taste sweet. They put bees in houses called hives.

# - am El Rayan waterfalls

Last week our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Raya It was beautiful! There are two lakes there. The sound of water fallings very loud. We learned that water comes from an oasis in the desert. It a place in the desert with water. We saw some of the birds and my favor was the flamingo. We had fun and it was a fantastic day.

# Review on Umit (3)

# Natural resources quant

Nat			
	date فحم	z economy	
coal	flax	January linen	
fertile	pale طین	mine ، نسحب ندون	parties of the same
mud materials	'	أموادحم	

# States of water about

	سانن	solid	صب	gas	: <del></del>
liquid	يفلى	freeze	يتحمد	melt	سون
boil	شکل ثابت				
fixed shape	ا سکن دیت				

# Physical properties

	1 .	to I mass	
bend	hard يطوي	mass حشن - صلب	450
	rough رائحة	soft حشن	
odor		چ <u>س</u> ن	
sticky	texture لرح - لاصق	0-	

#### Stories ...

			طائر الفلامنج	hole	حفرة
dig	يحفر	flamingo	,		igh.
sink	بغطس / يغوص	shovel		tunnel	
skeleton	هبكل عظمي	expert	خيبر		

## First Conditional

Form: If + present simple, will + inf.

Usage: We use the first conditional:

To describe events which will probably happen in the future.

e.g. If we go to the museum, we will see dinosaur bones.

### **Second Conditional**

Form: If + past simple, would + inf.

### Usage: We use the second conditional:

To describe events we imagine, but probably won't happen.

e.g. If it showed in October, I would be very surprised.

# Reported speech

#### Direct speech ...

الكلام لمباشر

The words that a person says

e.g. Seleem said, "I like reading comics."

#### Reported speech

الكام الغير المناشر (الكلام المنقول)

To report what a person said.

e.g. Seleem said he liked reading comics.

#### Notice the changes, -

لاحظ التغييرات

e.g. Fareeda said, "I can play tennis."

Fareeda said she could play tennis."

Ohange the subject according to the speaker.

Change the verb from present to past.

We don't use speech marks.

162 Unit (3) How we use our world

Help your child revise unit (3).

# pictation on Unit (3)

Lesson	(1)
--------	-----

		<b>\''</b> /	
	غاز الميثان		فجي
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		ARREST RESOLUTION AND ROOM BY AND ASSESSED.	سح دة
******	ترية المادات	448 ***************************	
A # # # # *	شلان		e <sup>†</sup>
,	Qy-		
	b	(43)	
	Lesson	{2}	
			بحمر
	جاروف	***************************************	
	حي ا	4 *	عثاناء
	•	•	
	Lesson	(3)	
	LESSON	(0)	
	Negroule.	A	حصبه
,, **			قماش الكتان
•	تات الكتان (خبوط الكتان)	# 1 4 \$ \$0\$ Reference \$40 = 65 = # \$4.000\$	
	ينى سوي		ورق البردي
	9,5		
		1	
	Lesson	(4)	
			حله
	ناعم / لين / طاي	Administration for the thir even form	
		医分类性医神经管征 经不完全的 计不可信息 化化合物 医阴道性	حفيف
	فاس اجامد	医中心性医神经病 一 医中央性原则	ثقيل
	لاصق / لزح	· 有最初的特別中央的中央	غريح
	_	+	
1 11200	0		إعجاد
	عار	*****************	ملمس / سبيع / قمان
L4 40 ***	سائل	ARRESTEEN WARTER SAN THE RESES OF SAN	عمی / کنیف
******		Appearation at a state of the	المالين المالين
* 4 4 5 4 7 7		2555	
	Lesson	(5)	
	Feder		محقبه إسريجة
	برظمان أجاء	Agend do no passed a court to the	حلبب
	بر حارميني	64#4f74*6*6*855## # A + + 44#15*	
	للمسل	448444444444	شراب القيقب
	5 va	*# \$1 # F 41 # 5	عف لاطبق
	زىت نىا:	ware we desirater (should be to man)	
	Q. Constitution of the con		A. W. 3. T
		(0)	* ** ** **
•	Lessor	(6)	
	بعق	we do resistant the contract of the contract o	حط الساحلين.
* * * * * *	4.11	*	7
	النشووس / طائر الملامني	47	153

# **Activities On Unit (3)**

بالتكام غولها بية ونعتما

# Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

to build houses and other building 1. People in ancient Egypt used a) mud b) gold

d) sand

They took mud from the

c) ocean

when it was so d) sea

They made mud into square

a) picks

a) lake

b) bricks

b) Nile

c) chicks

d) luck

The bricks were hard and

when they dned

a) wrong

b) strong

c) weak

d) soft

# Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

## enjoy - visited - train - Alexandria - play

Ali Where did you go last weekend?

Omar I went to 1) .....

Ali: How did you go there?

Omar By 2) .......

Ali: What did you do?

Omar 13) ....... Alexandria Library Ali

Did you 4) Omar Yes, I did.

#### Read the following text and answer the questions. 3

My name is Nada. I live in a big city. It's a very exciting place !! live. It's quiet and comfortable. I can do a lot of activities and meet a la of friends. I love my city very much, but I have a big problem. The traffic is always busy on my way to school, so I sometimes go to school late. takes me an hour to reach school. There are many places to visit in Ins city.

# Activities On Unit (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. Nada lives in a big
  - b) house
- c) palace
- d) city
- The underlined word "late" means not
- a) small.
- c) big
- d) young

3. It takes Nada

hour to reach school

- a) four
- b) three
- c) two
- d) one

- B) Answer the following questions.
- What's the big problem Nada has?
- 5. How is Nada's city?

# The Reader

# Read and write **f** (**True**) or **f** (**False**).

- The dugong was called "Donga".
- Donga lives in the mangrove forest.
- The Nubian ibex lives in Hill Elba.
- Gebel Elba was very steep for Subira's legs.

# Complete the following sentences:

Nasser Jubari came to

2. Jubari's mother taught him not to stay near animals with big

#### 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1. Hani said that he
  - a) eat b) eats
- c) will eat
- d) ate

- If I have money, I

  - a) will b) would
- c) could
- buy a car d) might

PiQ

- 3. What would you do if you
  - a) have b) has
- c) had
- a lot of money d) having

- 4. If you studied hard, you .
  - a) will b) would
- c) may
- Succeed d) can

- 5. Fareeda said she

  - a) can b) will c) may
- SWIM WE

- 6. If she to the museum, she'll see dinosaur bones

- a) go b) goes c) went d) will go 6 Order the words to make correct sentences.
- 1. are Coal gas and resources non-renewable .
- 2. linen make People flax from .
- 3. liked honey Who ancient in Egypt ?
  - Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Papyrus** 

Guiding elements:

(Ancient Egypt - used - plant - baskets - paper - books)

# Unit Wefre on the move A roller coaster in Egypt in this and, the students will... explore how bikes move. \* identify, understand, and use question tags. read and follow instruction for making two different paper oirplanes. read a science-fiction story about flying and gravity. understand blogs about jobs in science. write an email using sequencing words, understand a story about the first man to fly.

Lesson (1)

# MY NEW BIKE

Listen and say.



brake

فرامل



pedal

دواسة / بنال



bike college



wheel

عجنه

### Extra vocabulary

cycling

push force

pull force

speed

science lesson

parents

grandparents ركوب الدراجات

hill قوة الدفع

transportation قوة السحب

safe places سرعة

cupboard حصة العنوم

الوالدان

وسنل مواصلات

أماكن أحنة

لولب / خرانة

# Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs فعلماه

	present		Past	P.P
		يركب دراجة	cycled	cycled
ycle	,	يدفع (للأمام)	pushed	pushed
<sub>ju</sub> sh		بسحب	pulled	pulled
pull			stopped	stopped
stop			slowed down	slowed down
slow down				
pass		تهر على	passed	passed

#### Irregular verbs العمال عبر منتمه

	Flesent	Past	P.P
ride		rode یرکب	ridden
fall	نع	يسقط/يا	fallen
put on	يغط على	put on يرتدي / يع	put on
fly		flew پطیر	flown
throw	ف	threw یری / یقد	thrown

## Important expressions and prepositions

أنا الأول على القصل:

Help your child id

lt's great!	إنه شئ راتعا	I see.	فيستنسد
Here I go!	H3 G1 ta	Be careful!	دن حربضا (حدرا)
900d at get in	•	up and down	اعنى وأسلان
90 UD	يدخل / يركب سيارة		بسرعه ٦ كيلومه في ساحة
90 down		get to	حمل إلى
Im top of the	Smide	get out	200
im top of the class.		Km/h = kilometer an hour	

كينومترفي لساحه

#### Listen and read.

Nabil, have you seen my new bike? I got it last week from my

الاسبوع الماضي من أجدادي الجديدة؟ حصلت عليها الاسبوع الماضي من أجدادي مين، هل رأيت دراجتي الجديدة؟ حصلت عليها الاسبوع الماضي من أجدادي

It's great! Shall I get my bike and we can cycle together?

انه لشيء رائع! هل أحضر دراجتي ونركب الدراجات مغا؟

Well, I haven't ridden a bike before. I don't know how. My parents want me to learn.

رن حسنا، أنا لم أركب دراجة من قبل. لا أعرف كيف. والداي يربياني أن اتعلم ركوب

I can teach you. It's easy. It's all about the forces which we learned about in our science lesson yesterday.

ي يمكنني أن أعلمك. الأمر سهل، الأمر كله يتعلق بالقوى التي تعمنا عنها في درس العلوم امس

lazen What do you mean?

ن ماذا تقصد؟ You use force to get the bike to move by pushing the pedals. You also use force to stop the bike, by using the brakes. That slows down or stops the wheels. If you want to increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly.

ما : يمكنك استخدام القوة لتجعل الدراجة تتحرك عن طريق دفع البدالات. يمكنك أيضا استخدام القوة لوقف الدراجة ، وذلك باستخدام الفرامل، هذ. يبطئ أم يوقف العجلات اذاكنت تريد زيادة سرعتك ، اضغط على البدالات يسرعة أكبر.

I see. I should be good at cycling then, as I'm top of the class in science! Here I go!

سرن: أنَّ فهمت، يجب أن أكون جيدا في ركوب الدراجات إذاء لأنني في القمة في درس العلوم؛ ها أنَّا ذا ا

Good. You'll need to cycle harder when you go up that hill.

ن جياد ستحناج أن تمود الدراجة بقوة أكبر عندما نصعد هذا التل

Mazen - Do you mean use more push force?

هل نقصد استخدام المزيد من قوة الدفع؟

Lesson (1)

Yes, but remember, when you go down the hill, the bike is going to go faster, so you'll need to use the brakes.

ي سر سندهب الدراجة بشكل أسرع، لذلك ستحتاج إلى استخدام الفرامل. Mazen I did it! That was great!

البد فعسها: 50 دلت رابعا:

Be careful! You're now cycling too slowly. You need to go Nabil faster or the bike will fall over ... Oh, dear, are you OK?

١٠٠ ١ مر سرد سرحة بيط، شديد، كنت بحاحة للذهاب أسرع أو سيسقط الدراجة ... أه ب عزوی، هل الت بخير؟

Mazen : I fell, but I'm fine.

المرن لقد سقطت، ولكن أنا بخير.

: I'll help you stand up.

Nabil

Thanks! That's an example of a pull force, isn't it? I think I'm Mazen

better at science than riding a bike!

أهداء عال سي قوم الشحياء أنيس كذلك؟ أعتقد أني قصل في العلوم من ركوب الدراجة،

# Answer the following questions:

What do you use to get the bike to move?

What do you use to stop the bike?

What do you do when you want to increase your speed?

· Did you know?

The fastest roller conster (Callabigues) in the world is the 100 and 1

It can move from 0 to 240 kilometers an hour in 4.9 seconds. You can ride أ (مدينه ابو طبي) أhin Abu Dhabi (مدينه ابو طبي).

Hep your child read a dialog about how a bike moves. Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 171

#### Read and learn.

- A push force makes the bike move.
  - Brakes slow down or stop the wheels.
- To increase your speed, push the pedals more quickly.
- If you cycle too slowly, the bike will fall over.
- When a car goes too fast down a hill, you need to use the brakes.
- The car goes at 60 Km/h. This is the car's speed.

Look and learn.

Forces

pull



open a door



fly a kite



. put on socks

push



kick a ball



close a laptop



throw a basketball

Usin your child read and learn about forces. المعاملة المعاملة عن الذر

# general Activities

نص الاستماع في مهاية الكتاب.

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d    usually get the	a		Aho governa				
Usually get the   b) car   c) taxi   d) train   took me to school today.	isten a	nd choose	the correct	ans	wer from a, b,	£,	or a.
Mom  a) Mom  b) Dad  c) Aunt  my dad and closed the car door.  thanked  d) visited  a) invited  a) invited  b) helped  c) thanked  d) visited  d) friends  c) cousins  d) friends  c) cousins  d) friends  c) cousins  d) plane  to school.  l'm good at riding a  a) rocket  b) ship  c) bike  d) plane  to school.  We can  a) bicycle  b) swim  c) cycle  d) bike  lesson yesterday.  d) wheels  d) music  d) music  friends  d) plane  to school.  Arabic  d) wheels  fryou want to stop the bike, use the  a) pedals  b) wheels  c) brakes  d) pedals  fryou want to increase the  a) distance  b) quantity  c) wheel  d) speed  that hill.	1) Lister	t the	*****	-			(D SCHOO!
Mom  a) Mom  b) Dad  c) Aunt  my dad and closed the car door.  thanked  d) visited  a) invited  a) invited  b) helped  c) thanked  d) visited  d) friends  c) cousins  d) friends  c) cousins  d) friends  c) cousins  d) plane  to school.  l'm good at riding a  a) rocket  b) ship  c) bike  d) plane  to school.  We can  a) bicycle  b) swim  c) cycle  d) bike  lesson yesterday.  d) wheels  d) music  d) music  friends  d) plane  to school.  Arabic  d) wheels  fryou want to stop the bike, use the  a) pedals  b) wheels  c) brakes  d) pedals  fryou want to increase the  a) distance  b) quantity  c) wheel  d) speed  that hill.	usually 5	b)	car	c)	taxi	d)	train
2 a) Morn my dad and closed the car door. 3 i invited a) helped c) thanked d) visited 4 I had some time to talk to my 4 I had some time to talk to my 5 I had some time to talk to my 6 I had some time to talk to my 7 I had some time to talk to my 8 I had some time to talk to my 9 I had some time to talk to my 9 I had some time to talk to my 9 I had some time to talk to my 9 I had some time to talk to my 9 I had and closed the car door. 9 I had some time to talk to my 9 I haked d) visited 9 I haked d) riched 9 I haked d) plane 9 I have con a) bike d) plane 9 I history b) swim c) cycle d) bike 10 I history b) swim c) cycle d) bike 11 lesson yesterday. 12 I haked d) plane 13 I haked d) plane 14 I haked d) plane 15 I haked d) bike 16 I haked d) plane 17 I haked d) plane 18 I haked d) plane 19 I haked d) plane 19 I haked d) plane 10 I haked d) plane 10 I haked d) plane 11 I haked d) bike 11 I haked d) bike 12 I haked d) bike 13 I haked d) bike 14 I haked d) bike 15 I haked d) plane 16 I haked d) bike 17 I haked d) plane 18 I haked d) bike 18 I haked d) bike 18 I haked d) bike 19 I haked d) bike 19 I haked d) bike 19 I haked d) bike 10 I haked d) bike 10 I haked d) bike 10 I haked d) bike 11 haked d) bike 11 haked d) bike 12 haked d) bike 13 haked d) bike 14 haked d) bike 15 haked d) bike 16 haked d) bike 18 haked d)	1. a) bus				took m	e to	school today.
a) invited a) invited a) invited a) invited a) invited a) invited a) teachers b) uncles c) cousins d) friends  2 (hoose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  4 (hoose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  4 (hoose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  4 (hoose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  4 (hoose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  4 (hoose the correct ans		- b)	Dad	c)	Aunt	d)	Uncle
a) invited a) invited a) invited a) invited a) invited a) invited a) teachers b) uncles c) cousins d) friends  2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  3 I'm good at riding a a) rocket b) ship c) bike d) plane to school.  4 We can a) bicycle b) swim c) cycle d) bike lesson yesterday.  4 Marabic d) music  5 If you want to stop the bike, use the a) pedals b) brakes c) seats d) wheels 5 If you want to increase the a) distance b) quantity c) wheel d) speed that hill.  7 Cycle harder when you go c) in d) out	a) Moin	,		. 1	my dad and cl	ose	d the car door.
1 had sechers a) teachers b) uncles c) cousins d) friends  (hoose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  (hoose the correct answer from a.  (hoose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  (hoose the correct answer from a.  (hoos		b)	holood.	c)	thanked	d)	visited
1 had sechers a) teachers b) uncles c) cousins d) friends  (hoose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  (hoose the correct answer from a.  (hoose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  (hoose the correct answer from a.  (hoos	a) Invitos	time to tall	k to my	٠.,			r to a de
(hoose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.  I'm good at riding a  I'm good at riding	I had some	rs b)	uncles	c)	cousins	d)	triends
1. I'm good at riding a a) rocket b) ship c) bike d) plane to school.  2. We can a) bicycle b) swim c) cycle d) bike lesson yesterday.  3. We learned about forces in our a) history b) science c) Arabic d) music  4. The bike moves by pushing the a) pedals b) brakes c) seats d) wheels 5. If you want to stop the bike, use the a) seats b) wheels c) brakes c) brakes d) pedals push the pedals more quickly. f) gush the pedals more quickly. c) wheel d) speed that hill.  7. Cycle harder when you go c) in d) out	a) [640.11		anewor fra	m a	b c or d		
1. I'm good at riding a a) rocket b) ship c) bike d) plane to school.  2. We can a) bicycle b) swim c) cycle d) bike lesson yesterday.  3. We learned about forces in our a) history b) science c) Arabic d) music  4. The bike moves by pushing the a) pedals b) brakes c) seats d) wheels 5. If you want to stop the bike, use the a) seats b) wheels c) brakes c) brakes d) pedals push the pedals more quickly. f) gush the pedals more quickly. c) wheel d) speed that hill.  7. Cycle harder when you go c) in d) out	(hoose	ille correct	answer no	14 -	, -, -, 01		
a) rocket  b) strip  c) cycle  d) bike  lesson yesterday.  d) wheels  b) science  c) Arabic  d) music  d) music  d) wheels  f you want to stop the bike, use the  a) seats  b) wheels  c) brakes  c) brakes  d) pedals  f you want to increase the  a) distance  b) quantity  c) in  d) out	(E)	riding a					•
a) rocket  2. We can a) bicycle b) swim c) cycle d) bike lesson yesterday.  3. We learned about forces in our a) history b) science c) Arabic d) music  4. The bike moves by pushing the a) pedals b) brakes c) seats d) wheels 5. If you want to stop the bike, use the a) seats b) wheels c) brakes c) brakes d) pedals push the pedals more quickly. f) tyou want to increase the a) distance b) quantity c) wheel d) speed that hill.  7. Cycle harder when you go c) in d) out	I'm good a	h)	ship	c)	bike	d)	plane
2. We can a) bicycle b) swim c) cycle d) bike lesson yesterday.  3. We learned about forces in our a) history b) science c) Arabic d) music  4. The bike moves by pushing the a) pedals b) brakes c) seats d) wheels 5. If you want to stop the bike, use the a) seats b) wheels c) brakes c) brakes d) pedals push the pedals more quickly. f) tyou want to increase the a) distance b) quantity c) wheel d) speed that hill. 7. Cycle harder when you go c) in d) out	a) rocket	•					to school.
a) bicycle  3. We learned about forces in our  a) history  b) science  c) Arabic  d) music  4. The bike moves by pushing the  a) pedals  b) brakes  c) seats  d) wheels  5. If you want to stop the bike, use the  a) seats  b) wheels  c) brakes  c) brakes  d) pedals  push the pedals more quickly.  for you want to increase the  a) distance  b) quantity  c) wheel  d) speed  that hill.	. We can		owim	c)	cycle	d)	bike
3. We learned about forces in our  a) history  b) science  c) Arabic  d) music  4. The bike moves by pushing the  a) pedals  b) brakes  c) seats  d) wheels  5. If you want to stop the bike, use the  a) seats  b) wheels  c) brakes  c) brakes  d) pedals  push the pedals more quickly.  f) you want to increase the  a) distance  b) quantity  c) wheel  d) speed  that hill.	· hiovele	u u u	SWILL	Uj	oyo.c	les	son yesterday.
a) history  4. The bike moves by pushing the  a) pedals b) brakes c) seats d) wheels  5. If you want to stop the bike, use the a) seats b) wheels c) brakes c) brakes d) pedals push the pedals more quickly. for that hill. c) draws b) up c) in  d) out	we learne	d about tore	ces in our	-1	Arobic		
4. The bike moves by pushing the  a) pedals b) brakes c) seats  5. If you want to stop the bike, use the a) seats b) wheels c) brakes c) brakes d) pedals push the pedals more quickly. push the pedals more quickly. c) wheel d) speed that hill. c) down	-) history	י (מ	Science	Cj	Alabic	u	
a) pedals b) brakes c) seats 5. If you want to stop the bike, use the a) seats b) wheels c) brakes d) pedals , push the pedals more quickly. push the pedals more quickly. c) wheel d) speed that hill. c) contains the pedals more quickly. that hill.	The bike r	noves by pu	ishing the	٠, ,		۷١.	wheels
5. If you want to stop the bike, use the  a) seats b) wheels c) brakes d) pedals , push the pedals more quickly.  6. If you want to increase the a) distance b) quantity c) wheel d) speed that hill.  7. Cycle harder when you go c) in d) out	a) nedals	(b)	prakes		seats	aj	WIICOIO
a) seats b) wheels c) brakes push the pedals more quickly. c) wheel c) wheel that hill. c) in d) out		t to stop the	e bike, use th	<b>e</b> .			dala
6. If you want to increase the a) distance b) quantity c) wheel c) wheel that hill.  7. Cycle harder when you go c) in d) out			wheels	c)	brakes	d)	pegais
a) distance b) quantity c) that hill.  7. Cycle harder when you go c) in d) out	a) Seals				, push the pe	adal	S WOLA drickly.
7. Cycle harder when you go c) in			quantity	c)	wheel	d)	speed
a) alaum (b) III) (c) III	a) distant	-					that niii.
a) down b) up				6	in	d)	out
	a) down	b)	up	nee	d to use the		
8. When you go fast down a hill, you need to use the	<ol><li>When you</li></ol>	go fast do	wn a niii, you	-1	hrakes	d)	seats
a) wheels b) pedals c) brakes force is helping someone stand up.		s <b>b</b> )	pedals	6)	no is helping s	som	eone stand up.
	9. An examp	le of a 🔠				പ്	sleep
a) pull b) push c) relax d) sleep	a) pull	b)	push	c)	relax	<u>.</u> ,	١.
10 I'm good at	* *				. Deser	al	cycled
a) cycle b) cycles c) cycling d) cycled		b)	cycles	c)	cycling		

# 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I usually get the bus to school, but Dad took me to school today. opened the car door and got in. Dad started the car and when we passed the park, the car was traveling at 40 kilometers an hour. It didn't take long to get to school. I thanked my dad, got out, and closed the car door, I was early, so I had some time to talk to my friends. I like it when Dad takes me to school.

# A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. I usually get to school by
  - a) car
- b) train
- c) bus
- d) boat
- The underlined words "get to" mean to

at school

······ today

- a) play
- b) run
- c) walk
- d) arrive

- 3. I went to school with
  - a) Mom
- b) Dad
- c) brother
- d) sister

# B) Answer the following questions.

- 4. What speed was the car traveling at?
- 5. What did you do when you get to school early?



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Your new bike

**Guiding words:** 

(birthday - my parents - learn how - pedals - brakes )

# LANGUAGE

listen and say.









tires إطارات spring

زنيرك

rope حبل

Key Vocabu.

friction

tennis ball فوة لاحتكاك

object قوة لشد (الضغط)

tension

space

path فراغ/مساحة/ فضاء

airresistance

press مقاومة لهواء

gravity

spring force الجادية الاصية

ale normal size

scientist

plane

dictionary طائرة

keyboard

hang لوحة معاتبح

موس

ترد سی

يصعط عني

6.50

Defin

tension:

It is a pull force.

gravity

a force that pulls objects toward the Earth

Hetton

rubbing of one surface against another

air restore

works against an object as it moves through the air.

spring

happens when you press a spring and it gets smaller.

The spring returns to its normal size when you take your

finger off.

# Question tag

السؤال المذيل

It has two parts.

بتارن من جزئين،

a sentence, question tag?

(2)

### Usage:

We use it to check or confirm information.

المذيل للتحقق من المعلومات أو تأكيدها.

#### Form

The question tag is formed of:

يكون السؤال المذيل من:

helping verb / modal verb + subject pronoun?

فعل ناقص ، فعل عصاعد

ضمير فاعل

#### Notes

positive sentence, negative tag?

لجملة مثبتة 🔷 السؤال منفي

e.g. You live in Egypt, don't you?

الجملة منفية 🛶 السؤال مثبت 🧢 negative sentence, positive tag?

e.g. Ali didn't go home, did he?

We use a comma before the question tag and a question mark after the question tag.

Lesson (2) | ispare | was | were -- isn't | aren's لاحظ الأفعال في حالتي الاثبات والنفي: have / has / had + P.P haven'i hasn' has will / would / can won't wouldn't couldn't mucin /could / must eg, This bird can fly, cant it? e.g. He call you tomorrow, he? عند عدم وجود فعل مساعد أو ناقص في الجملة: don't مصدر الفعل doesn't y+s, es, ies didn't - التصريف الثاني للفعل e.g. They like museums, don't they? eg. She makes tea, doesn't she? ed. He visited the zoo, didn't he? Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ... there? 1. There isn't any coffee in the cupboard, d) have c) are she? b) is a) am She didn't tell me her name, d) weren't c) wasn't send Grandpa an email, won't you? b) didn't a) did d) must c) Will 3. You we? b) may a) can d' aren't We can make dinner tonight, c) mustn't be hot tomorrow, will it? h) isn't a) can't d) aren't c) won't 5. **It** b) isn't 2) Read and complete with the correct form a) can't he? in Damietta, don't you? 1. Dad will help me with my homework, they? 2. You to the sports center, didn't she? They can speak English, Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 177 4. Hala

العلام طفلك أن يقهم السقال المذيار.

# **General Activities**



a) Tension

# Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box;

	alan	t - gravity - r	Vilat - Scientis	r - COOK	
Anas .	I went to	the museum t	oday.		
Safia :	Really! 1)	1 v + b +*		talking to Was the	
Anas	There wa	is a 2)	t	talking to some child	167
Safia	What did	he talk about	?	- ald	eŋ.
Anas :		rtance of 3)			
Safia :	You unde	rstood it, 4)		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	לוום
Anas :				·	
2 Read	l and com	olete the sen	tences with wo	ords from the box:	
	slow	ly - space - fr	iction - smalle	er - pull	
. You can f	all on ice t	ecause there	is less	than on the p	ath.
. Tension is	sa .	\$475 FR. 40. 4 E. Y. Y.		fo	rce,
. Air resista	ance make	s an object m	ove more		4
. When you	press on	a spring, it ge	ts		
Gravity keeps people from flying up into					
3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.					
1.	betwe	en the bike tir	es and the roa	d stops you from falli	ng
a) Frict	tion	h) Tension	c) Gravity	d) Force	
2. When ye	ou hang a	bag on a hook	, the bag create	es a pull force called	
a) push		to ) friction	a) tongion	Ul legigrans	
3.		works agains	t an object as i	it moves through the	
a) Tens	sion	Gravity	a) Air resista	nce d) Pull	

b) Gravity c) Air resistance

Lesson (2) happens when you press a spring and it gets smaller. The spring returns to its normal size when you take your finger off.

b) Friction c) Grown c) Gravity 47 Spring force a) Tension is a force that pulls objects toward the Earth. a) Airresistance b) Gravity c) Spring force 1) Tension The children visited the science museum today, ? a) didn't they b) did they c) were they d) had they people can see some interesting things there, ? a) can they d) won't they Their teacher won't give them a lot of homework, ? b) won't they c) can he a) will he d) can't he The science museum isn't far from the city center, ? b) is it c) does it d) doesn't it a) isn't it 10. Hamdi and his family traveled by boat, didn't b) him c) they d) them a) he Order the words to make correct sentences. 1 won't - tomorrow - It - rain - it - , will - ? 2. does - doesn't - Your - French, - mom - speak - she - ? 3. didn't - chicken, - She - have - she - did - ? (5) Complete the question tags. <sup>1. Mr</sup> Hassan doesn't drive cars, he? 2.1'll be in your class next year,

3. Rania can play the guitar, she? 4. Eman didn't go to the park, she? 5. I like English, ....

1?



# PAPER AIRPLANES

## Key vocabulary

paper airplane	triangle طائوة ورقية	
dart	top سهم (طادرة ورقية)	ch.
glider	tip طائرة شراعية	(Spe / Life
instructions	vertically	4)6
corner	اوية - ركن flat	المالية المالية
faster	farther اسع	moss / some
longer	wing اطول	42.
		<b>≻</b> I.,

#### Conjugation of verbs

	Present	<b>P</b> ast	p.p
take		took باعد	taken
fold	e	folded يطوه	folded
crease	. / بصغط لعمل بُنيه / يثني	creased يحتنا	creased
repeat		repeated یکرد	repeated

### Important expressions and prepositions

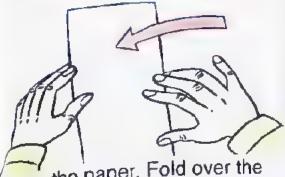
a piece of	turn over قطعة من	سافه
ın half	from point to point فالمنتصف	س نقطة إلى نقطة
fold down	make sure ; بطوى لأسفل	بنأكي
fold over	?? How far?	کم معسافة ؟

# Instructions. Make a dark paper discusses

Take a piece of paper and fold it in half (1) 1 2 / 1 rease it. خد فطعة من الورق واصوها نصفين رأسيًا واصعد نور

Fold down one wing and crease the top of it. Then fold it down again and crease it again.

صو احد احتجتها واصغط لثنيه العليا ثم أطوها لأسفل و صفت سي بسيه مردّ حري.



Open the paper. Fold over the two corners.

افتر الورات، لله أعلى طاقيي



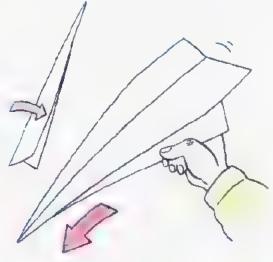
🛭 Turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease it.

افلب الورفة. أطوها لنصفين واصغط على الثنيه.



Repeat step 4 with the other wing. Your Dart is ready to fly.

كرر الحصوة الرابعة مع الجناح الآخر. صارتك الورقية ماهازه للطيران



Help your child make a Dart paper airplane.

سعد طفلك أن يصنع طائرة سهم ورقية.

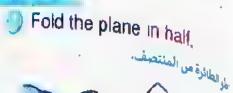
Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 181

# Read the instructions. Make a Glider paper airplan The Gilder

Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the Dart.

كرر الخطوتين ١ و ٢ من صناعة الطائرة الورقية،

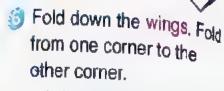
Fold over the top triangle. Crease it. اطو المثلث أعلى لورقة ثم اضغط على الثنيه.



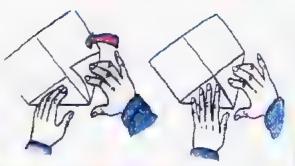


Fold over the top two corners again. Make sure all of the paper is flat.

اطو أعلى الجانبين مرة ثانية. تأكد من أن كل الورق مسطح،

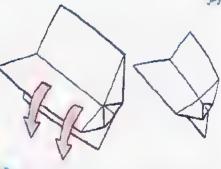


موالاجنحة لأسفل. اطو من جانب إلى الجانب



Fold over the tip from point to point. Crease everything well.

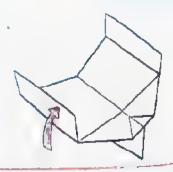
اطو الصرف الأعلى من تقطه لي احرى، واضعط على كل تبيه بشكل



Now fold up a small (about 1 cm) piece of the wing. Your Glider is ready to fly!

والان اطوأعلى الحدج قطعه تبلغ ١ سم. طادرتك شراعية جاهزة للطيران.





Help your child make a Dart paper airplane. سف طعت ال يسلع طائرة سهم ورقية.

# general Activities

Read and complete the dialog with the words in the ison

What are you doing, Anas? I'm making a 1) ...... airplane. self How do you make it? Anas Fold a piece of paper in half 2) 501 What do you do after that? Anas the top two corners. Fold down the two wings. Fold 3) Self Anas Your 4) ..... is ready to fly.

Read and complete the text with words from the box:

tip - top - down - piece - peace

To make a Glider paper airplane, you need to take a 1) of paper and fold it in half vertically. Fold over the 2) two corners. from point to point and crease everything well. Fold 4) ...... the wings. Fold up a small piece of the wing. It's ready now.

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

#### A Dart paper airplane

Guiding words:

(paper - vertically - crease - open - Fold - Turn)

## Lesson (4)

## GRANDPA'S SPECIAL SHOES

#### Key vocabulary

astronaut	والما فصاد	a trampoline	ترامبولين (جهار للقفر)	gravity
special	حرس ممہ	a parachute		normal

#### Extra vocabulary

usual	leaves	اور ق شجر	stadium
different	الall محسن	فصل الحريف	amazing
ground	planets أرض	كواكب	pilot
journey	space rocket	الصاروح فضاء	desert

#### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs عال صبحمه

	Present	Past	P.P
look like		looked like	looked like
reply		replied يرد / بجيب	replied
follow		followed يتبح	followed
jump		jumped يفقر	jumped
float		floated طعو	floated
pour		poured	poured
•			

#### Irregular verbs 🚥

	Present	Past	P.P
wear		wore برندې	worn
bring		brought بحضر	brought
show		showed ببس/ بعرض	shown
sit down		sat down يحس	sat down
hit		hit بضرب	hit
fall		fell بفح	fallen

Lesson (4) Important expressions and preparation,

better than usual

fly over بجانبهم

نج من float الزج من

by their sides a pair of pefinitions

normal

gravity

tour

astronaut

Help your else.

usual, not different

a force that pulls things to the ground

somebody who travels into space for a job

a journey when you visit many different places

different from others and better than usual special

listen and read.

### Flying signs

O She has moved her arm to the right, so she will fly to the right.

حاكت ذاعها للبهائ، لدلك ستصبر إلى اليمين.

She has both arms above her head, so she will fly higher.

وقعت دراعتها فوق رأسها والذلك سوف تعدر الأحل

- She has put her arms down by her sides, so she will lly down again.
- ومنعاب والمنهايل منقل على حاسبها والذلك سنهبط مرة أخراب She has moved her arm to the left, so she will fly to the left.

حركت دراعها لبيسار، لذلك ستطير إلى اليسار،



Listen and read.

## Special shipes

It was the year 2122 and Hady and Hoda's grandpa was visiting them. Grandpa was an astronaut when he was younger. When he visited them, he always brought something interesting.



كان ذلك عام ٢١٢٧، كان الجد يرور هادى وهدى. كان الجدار ند فضاء عندما كان أصعب سبب عندما كان برورهم كان يجلب دائما شيئا مثيرا.

"Hello Grandpa!" said Hady. "Do you have something to show us?" asked Hoda. "I always bring you something, don't !? Look at these," "They don't look like normal shoes, "said Hady. "You're right," Grandpa replied. "Let's go outside. I'll show you what the shoe can do." he said. He showed the children a pair of shoes. Hoda and Hady followed Grandpa out of the house to a hill. They were very excited. They sat down and Grandpa took three pairs of shoes from a bag.

قال هادى المرحيا ابها البحد المدالت هدى الله تديد شيء ريد قل مد مد مد حدد العادية العادية المرحيا ابها البحد والظهر للأطفال روج من الرحدية قال هاي الدين مسر محسد العادية البيالجد: "انت على حق" الدعنا ناهب للحارج ساريك ما يتكن بالدين ما ما مناول شيالي وشدى الجد إلى خارج الما ول ثير والدي من مناصلي من مناصلين والمدين العقيدة.

"Gravity usually pulls things to the ground," said Grandpa."But these are special shoes. When you wear them, gravity does not pull you down. So children, if you could fly, what would you do?"

قال الجد:" عادة ما تسعى الجاذبية الأشياء إلى لارض". "لكن هذه أحسية خاصه. عندما ترتديها، فإن الجاذبية لا سبت أن أن سبل أن ما طوري، إن شبه استطمعور المدران فدادا إلكنكم أن تفعلوا؟" Lesson (4)

"I would fly over the sea;" said Hoda "I atta "Would fly over the sea," said Hoda. "Let's start with a tour of our city," Grandpa said."Put these shoes on. Now, hit your left foot with your right Grander times. One, two, three ... Good. Look! You can fly!"

المناهدة الم 

The children flew up into the air. They could move right or left by moving an arm to that side. If they put both their arms above their head, they flew higher up. If they put their arms down by their sides, they flew down again. Hoda and Hady loved flying. It was an amazing feeling. They could see all the city from up there.

م الاحمة الذي يبوء السميد المتراد يميم الريسار عن طريق تحريث ذراع إلى هذا الجانب. اذا وضعها - بيد الماران و دسيم ، حارا الرغال ما وضعوا الارعهم على جالبهم ، طاروا لاسفل مرة **بالنية. أحب هاري** وهدى الطيرُان. لقد كان شعورا رانعا. بمكنهم روبة كل المدينة من الأعلى هناك.

After ten minutes, Grandpa said, "OK children. Now we need to go down to the ground again." When they were on the ground, Hoda asked, "Why doesn't everybody have shoes like these?" "Because they are only for astronauts!" said Grandpa. "And special people too, like my favorite grandchildren!"

المعدد المال الان حق بعدمه الى الأنهال إلى الارض مرة أخرى، و من الجد الانهم فقم من العديد من العديد عند من من العديد الانهم فقم

" والاشتحاص المديرون ايضا، مثل أحفادي المفضلين!"

listen and read.



is what makes things fall to the ground. It is the force that makes leaves fall to the ground in fall and not float above the tree. When this boy jumps on the bed, gravity brings him down and stops him floating up into the . It is also the force that keeps the planets moving around the

إن الجاذبية عن التي تجعل الأشياء بسقط على الارض. وهي انقوه التي تجعل أوراق الشجر تسقط في الحريف على الأرض ولا نظير أعلى الشجر، وعثلما يففز هذا الولد على السرير تسحبه الجاذبية لأسفل وبمنعه من المعو في انهواء، وهي أيضا الموة التي تجعل الكواكب تدور حول الشمس.

What would happen if there was no gravity?

Everything would float up into the air.

What makes the parachute go down to the ground?

It's gravity.





Help your child read about gravity.

	Listen and cho	ose	the correc	t a	nswer from ,	1 9	or
1	Grandpa showed	the	children a	pair	of		
1.	a) shoes a) don't look lik	b) e	socks	c)	boots	a)	gloves
	THEY US.	b)	normal	c)	local	d)	shoes. unusual
	They Tollow	napa b)	a out of the	c)	use to a club	d)	room
	They were		• •		_		excited
	Read and comp	lete	the text	witl	words from the	ne b	OX.
2	-				er - up - down		
	The children flew y could move right	1). or le	eft by movi	ng a	n arm to that sic	le. I	into the air. I they put both
	t their arms 0	lowi	i by their o	,	, 11109	flev	v down again.
المحا	and Hady loved	tiyir	ig. Il was a	II QI	nazing 1/		
The	v could see all the	city	from up to	ere.	•		
3	Order the work	is to	make co	rec	t sentences.		
showed - a pair of - Grandpa - children - shoes - the							
2.	2 you something - to show - have - us - ?						
Ž.	above - willage - flying - the - enjoyed						
4.	fall - to - the ground - Leaves - in fall						



#### Read the following text and answer the questions.

"Gravity usually pulls things to the ground," said Grandpa."But these are special shoes. When you wear them, gravity does not pull you down. So children, if you could fly, what would you do?" "I would fly over the stadium to watch my favorite football team, "Hady said. "I would fly over the sea," said Hoda. "Let's start with a tour of our city," Grandpa said. Put these shoes on. Now, hit your left foot with your right foot three times. One two, three...Good. Look! You can fly!"

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. Gravity usually
  a) pushes
  b) sells
  c) pulls
  things to the ground
  d) buys
- 2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the
  - a) things b) shoes c) children d) cities
- Grandpa's shoes are
  - a) special b) ordinary c) normal d) common

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- 4. Why would Hady fly over the stadium?
- 5. What's the main idea of the text?

Jobs

web designer راند فضاء

astronaut

pilot مهندس

engineer

doctor مهندس معماری

architect

SC 11 1 11 1

science فيزياء

physics chemistry

math کیمیاء

architecture

English هندسة معمارية

Extra

health كوكب المريخ

acceleration

Mars

office سرعة

medicine نهارت

skills robot

skateboard انسان آلی

Conju

Present

solve

≈ solve solve

affect

affect يوترعني affect

decide

decide decide يقرر

6Uq

end end نھی

organize

organize

<sup>(lesign</sup>

organize بنظم

Help your chira.

design بصمم

design

بحصل على مساعدة من

يس لنې

يعل في مشروع

معطة القصاء الدولية

#### Irregular verbs calmo me classic

Present	Past
	1 (15)

grow up	rresent	Past
leave		up P.F
give	اeft بعادر	grown up
speak	gave بعطب	
meet	spok يتحنث	e given
lmna-l	met بقابل	spoken met

## Important expressions and prepositions

express	ions and	Dropo-W
doresearch	aria aria	Sublissodand
do things		close to
work hard		get help from
in the day	يعمل بجد	getajob
across the world	في النهار	work for
Work on a project	حول الع لم	getsick
interested n+(noun/v+ing	)	
our own planet	,	
International Space Station		

#### **Definitions**

pilot	a person who flies airplanes
astronaut	a person who works in space
engineer	a person who builds roads and bridges
aircraft = airplane	people can travel through the air on it
architect	a person who designs buildings and roads

Lesson (5)
Lesson (5)
Lesson (5)



videos of the International Space Station, it looks fun living without videos of the people float all the time! I've read a lot about the planet gravity—the people scientists are doing. Maybe! can visit Mars one

العادي الخرى للها المهم دراسة الكواكب لأخرى للها المهم دراسة الكواكب لأخرى للها المهم دراسة الكواكب لأخرى للها عندم بشاهد فيديوهان عرب من المهم ديوهان عرب المهم ديوهان عرب المهم ديوهان عرب المهم ديوهان عرب المهم ديوها الموقعة المربخ يوما ما المر

My name is Jana. When I grow up, I'd love to be an engineer like my Uncle Wael. His job sounds really interesting. Did you know that people who do this job don't only help to build roads and bridges?

They also help make things such as skateboards!



Uncle Wael says that you need to understand science to do this job

For example, you need to know how friction and different forces affect

how skateboards move.

ور مهندسة مثل عمى وثيل، وطبقته تبدو مثيرة للاهتمام حقا، هل تعلم المدرق والحسور؟ إنهم يساعدون أيضًا في الطبرق والحسور؟ إنهم يساعدون أيضًا في الطبرق والحسور؟ إنهم يساعدون أيضًا في الطبرة والميام نهذه المهمة. على سمى العلوم للعبام نهذه المهمة. على سمى العلوم للعبام نهذه المهمة. على سمى العلوم للعبام نهذه المهمة.

I'm Karim. I decided I wanted to be a pilot when I went to an airplane festival with my mom and dad. We saw lots of different planes flying in the sky, and some of them did amazing moves, flying close to the ground, and then flying around in a circle.

Unit (4)

The planes flew in groups, sometimes with their wings very close together It looked amazing. There was also a small museum, and I learned how air resistance helps the planes to stay in the air!

الكريم. قررت أنني أريد أن أصبح طيارا عندما ذهبت إلى مهرجان للطائرات مع أي وأبي. رايف الكتير من المناك المختلفة تحلق في السماء ، وبعضها قام بحركات مذهلة ، وحلقت بالقرب من الأرص ، ثم حنقت وللرة. حلقت الطائرات في مجموعات ، وأحيانا تكون اجنعتها قريبة جدا من بعضها البعض بدا الاصر 

#### Read the article about Sherif.

Meet Sherif, 24, from Cairo. He's an engineer who has started his own company.

تعرف على شريف، ٢٤ عاما، من القاهرة. إنه مهندس والذي بدا شركته الخاصة.

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things.



· شريف أن يكون مهندسا عددما كان عمره عشر سنوات. كان دائما بشاهد البرامج لتلفزيونية عن وبوتات ، وكان يحب صنع الأشياء,

When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online. He did his school work in the day and in the evening he worked on his robot projects. This experience helped him to start his own company.

ها كان عمره ثلاثة عشر عامًا عبداً في مساعدة شركة تصميم رودوب عبر الإنترنت. فْنَام بعمله المدرسي في الروق المساء كان يعمل في مشاريسة الروبوت الحاصة به ساعدته هذه التجربة علي بدء شركته الخاصة.

that the science and math lessons at school nelped him to learn to solve problems. He also found English very useful. He said that the problems. He also found English very useful as it helps him to solve problems the world. He is now learning to solve people across the world. He is now learning to with people across the world. to solve people across the world. He is now learning Japanese so he with people in Japan.

an talk to people in Japan. مرد مردس في العمل مع الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم، وهو الان النا الله رد و رسد العمل مع الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم. وهو الان يتعلم الناس و عميع أنحاء العالم. وهو الان يتعلم النا

المربية عنى بنمكر من لتحبت لي لباس في سيبير. a job is about doing things which help other people around the savs.

حول مستبه ي ، الوضيفة هي ما ينعلق بفعل الأشياء التي تساعد الآخرين في جميع أنحاء العالم» world," he says.

## Ask and answer.

What job do you want to do when you are order



I want to be a doctor because I want to help people who are sich.

I want to be an architect because I want to design new buildings.



On Earth, gravity pushes our bones together There is no gravity in space, so some bones move apart. So astronauts who spend six months on the International Space Station can grow 3% taller! (They return to their usual size back on Earth.)



## **General Activities**

سالتكاا غيلها ية ولعنها

1 Listen a	nd choose the corr	ect answer from a,	b, c, ord
0		., =145(0)451085-4 4+14-(4%:	1
a) doctor	b) engineer	c) teacher	d) vet
	watched TV program		
	b) sports	c) robots	d) birds
		-	d) planie things
A busines	b) colling	c) making	d) playing
4. When he wa	as , he started	helping a robot desi	gn company
a) ten	b) eleven	c) twelve	d) thirteen
2 Choose ti	he correct answer	from a, b, c, or d.	- 411
		I'm interested in the s	tare and it.
a) nilot	h) doctor	c) engineer	d) actro-
2. When there's	s no gravity neonle		d) astronaut
a) float	b) caught	c) bought	d) boot
3	b) oddgill	help make things su	ich as skatobard
a) Teachers	b) Engineers	c) Pilots	d) Astronauta
		d to learn	
		c) science	
		when I went to	
		c) pi ot	d) architect
6.	,		es to stay in the
a) Gravity	b) Friction	c) Air resistance	•
	words to make co		,
1. skills - She - c	computer - good - l	has	
_	. An auchiteut		
2. new - building	s - An architect -	designs	
3. can - We - on	- traval - an aircraf	• · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	,
o- can we on	"aver" an alrera		

Read the following text and answer the questions.

wants to be a pilot. She wants sara wants to be a pilot. She wants an exciting job. She enjoys gara walls an exciting job. She enjoys and she likes visiting new places. She would like to work as aveling and team. Her friend Dalia wants to be a doctor. She would like to work as ariu ariu ariu bearing ariu bearing de ariu bearing de ariu bearing ariu bearing de ariu beari and why people get sick. She likes working with people thinks she'd like to work in medicine people's thinks she'd like to work in medicine.

choose the correct answer from a, b, cor d.

sara wants to be a/an...... b) engineer c) pilot a) doctor Dalia is interested in people's ......

d) astronaut

b) stories c) health noney

d) education

The underlined pronoun "She" refers to

a) Sara

b) Mona c) Dalia

d) Noha

3) Answer the following questions.

What does Sara enjoy doing?

; Who does Dalia like working with?

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Your future job

**Guiding words:** 

(science - engineer - buildings - bridges - skateboards)

Lesson (6)

### WRITING AN EMAIL

#### How to write an email

عيف تكتب بريدًا الكترونيًا



Remember, when you write an email to a friend, you can Remember, when you write an write how you would speak use informal language. You can write how you would speak to them, and start and end in a friendly way. For example:

- Start the email with Hi! or Hello! and How are you?
- Say what you want to do and why.
- Use sequencing words: First, then, and finally to order the information.
- Write two or three paragraphs.
- End with Bye for now! or See you soon!

#### Read the email.

From : Maged To : Asser

Subject : A job in the future

Hi Asser,

Are you enjoying the weekend at your grandparents?

You asked me what job I want to do in the future and I've decided now.

I want to be a scientist and study space. I'm really interested in space and

I want to understand it better. There's still so much that we don't know.

I talked to my parents about what I need to do. This is what they said:

First, I need to do well at school, especially in science.

الرنستمتع بعطلة نهاية الأسبوع عند أحدادك؟ لقد سألتني عن!لوظيمة التي أريد القيام بها في المستقبل ، افررت الان. اربيد ان آكون عالما وأدرس الفضاء. إنا مهتم حقّا بالفضاء واربيد أنَّ افهمه بشكل أفضل. لا يزال السك الكنير الذي لا نعرفه. تحدثت إلى والدي حول ما بجب أن افعله. هذا ما قالوه: أولا ، أنا بحاجة إلى القيام

إعمل حيد في المدرسة ، وخاصة في مجال العلوم.

Ineed to go to university and study subjects like chemistry, math, and Lesson (6) need know what physics is? It's all about energy, space, and time.

The poyou know what physics is? It's all about energy, space, and time.

The poyou want to study the stars and planete. المعالمة المحادثة المحادثة والردضية والعديدة والردضية والعديدة والمحادثة والعديدة و

عمد العدرية مواد مثل الكريدا، والروضيان والعدرية، هل العرب عدد المواد مثل الكريدا، والروضيان والعدرية، هل العرف عدد المواد مثل المديد إذا كنين ترغب في دريد المعافرة المديد إذا كنين ترغب في دريد المعافرة المديد ا والكواكس

Ineed to find a job at a place where people study space, like a Then I can work on projects and learn from other scientists. What doyou think? Do you know what job you want to do in the future? Bye for now!

اخير ، احتج إلى العثور على وظيفة في مكان يدرس فيه الناس الفضاء ، مثل الجامعة. ثم يمكنني العمل على المشارب Maged والتعبية من علماء أحرين, ما رأيك؟ هل تعرف الوظيفة التي تريد القيام بها في المستقيل»

وداعا ارترا

#### Inswer the following questions.

- 1. Does Maged want to go into space in the future?
- 2. What will he do when he leaves school?
- 3. What is the most important school subject for him?

## General Activities

1 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words.

to your friend Omar telling him about your future job.

Guiding words:

doctor - biology - science - hospital - sick

From

To

Subject:

2 Complete the email with words from the box.

Bye for now - Finally - First - Hello - How are you - Then

	Bye for flow
0	From : Reem
	To : Sherifa
	Subject: Future Job Sherifa
l	? Are you having fun on vacation?
	I'm thinking about the future and I've decided what I want to do. I want to
l	he as probited and design buildings. I'm really interested in designing
	buildings with renewable resources. I think we need to design better
,	buildings in the future.
l	I talked to my teachers about what I need to do.
١	, I need to work hard at school, especially in subjects like math, physics, art, and design. 4) , I need to go to university and study
ı	At university l'Illearn how to design lots of different buildings.
	.Theed to him - y
l	as an architect. I want to work with people who design apartments to live in.
	I'm not interested in designing big hotels or offices. What do you think?
	Do you know what job you want to do in the future?
	6)
	Reem

esson and say.

gound

anous

CENTURY

ields

ne) called

## Extra vocabulary

الرض	tower
یُشعی ایدعی	builder
	inventor
قرن (۰۰ علم)	water clock
* 4	confused

	wings
land	feathers

برج	frightened	خانگ
عمل ساء	nervous	هعتوس
مخترع	patient	فسنو
ساعة مائية	surprised	مبدهش
مرنبك المشوة	worried	فىق

## Conjugation of verbs

	Past	P.P	Prese	nt	Past	P.P
Presi	ent Past landed يهبط	landed	invent		invented	invent :
augh émh	laughed بمحت climbed بتسن	laughed climbed	include hurt		include: hurt	hurt

#### Important expressions and prepositions

walk through	يمثي عبر	made of	مصنوع من
find out	يكتشف	run back down	بحرى عايد لأسقن

#### **Definitions**

leathers	soft things that cover a bird	رينن
and	move down until something is on the ground	
nvent	make or design something for the first time	مخترع
Duilder	a person who builds houses, schools, etc.	عامل ہے۔
Inventor	a person who makes or designs new things	ينصرع

hip your child identify these words.

#### Listen and Read.

Ali was ten years old and he lived in the 9th century. He worked on his tather's farm. Every day that summer, he saw a man walk through the fields towards a tower. The man was old but looked strong. One day, Ali decided to talk to the man.

بغ على عشر سموت من العمد وعاش في القيال لناسع كان عمد في ما حمد الدد الله عد في الما عصامه المحد المحد

ساله عني "عقواه إلى أين انت ذاهب؟". اجاب لرحن أن عمل ق بيرج لقيليم . ساله عني اهل بساعيمان " " "

The man laughed."No, I'm an inventor. I'm 65 but I don't want to stop working. There are always new things to find out!"

ضعك الرجن وقال."لا ، أنَّ مخترع. دا عمري 65ع م كدي لا يد سوعت مد بعمر هدات بدا مديد مسيد . كتشافها!"

سانه على "سال ي تعدل على الان؟" وال الرحل احاء معرد مدر عدم من معنو مداي عدم المار على السانه على المان عدم ال

فل لوحل ها رهما حماحي، وشمامط موعر، من الحسب والدين السرع مير السال المسلم المسلم المسلم المسلم المائل مي المسلم المائل المائل المائل مي كلم سنمرف البيس كذلك؟

<sup>&</sup>quot;Excuse me, where are you going?" Ali asked.

<sup>&</sup>quot;I'm working at the old tower." the man answered.

<sup>&</sup>quot;Are you a builder?" Ali asked.

<sup>&</sup>quot;What are you working on now?" asked Ali.

<sup>&</sup>quot;I'm trying to find out how to fly like a bird." the man said, and walked away.

The next day, Ali decided to follow. He was carrying something.

<sup>&</sup>quot;What are you carrying?" asked Ali.

<sup>&</sup>quot;These are my wings. They are made of wood and feathers." he said.

<sup>&</sup>quot;Are you going to use them to fly?" asked Ali.

<sup>&</sup>quot; Well, why don't you come with me? Then we'll know, won't we?" he said

Lesson (7)

mey walked to the tower and climbed to the top. All watched as the man pit on his wings. "OK, here I go!" said the man, and he jumped from the put on the amazed because the man flew slowly to the ground! He pwer! All was amazed because the man flew slowly to the ground! He did not see him land.

ي عرج وصف و الاضي. شاهد علي لوجن وهو برندي جناحيه. قال الرجل "حسنا، هاانا ذارام ره: سيمس على لان الرحن طار بيط عملي لأرض! لم يره وهو يهيطر

Ali ran back down the tower and soon found the man. He was sitting in the ground. He looked unhappy.

'Are you ok?" said Ali.

"No! That hurt!" he said.

"But you flew! I saw you!" said Ali.

عني غين أن أصفر البرج وسرعان ما وجد الرجل كال جالسا على الأرض، بدا غير سعيد ال سامة عبر "هل التربخم" فاز برجن "لا هذا مولم!" قال عبي "لكنك طرت و أرتاع!"

"I flew but I did not land correctly," said the man. "I need to study birds better to find out how they land without hurting themselves."

ح . . . يعمل مشكل الأحمل لمعرف كيف بهبطون بدون الله

Ali later found out that the man called Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was an important person who invented many things, including water clocks.

ئ معنى رئيم : ي جعمد سهساه الدي احمر جلسماء كثيره وبعدال

But Ali did not know that in the future. Abbas Ibn Firnas became very famous because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.

عبد المعرف فلك والمستقيل اصبح عياس بالفرياس منهيو احدا لأنه ونما كان ول

## Lighter at Activities

بالحا فإلها فاللمناء بد

1	Listen and	thoose the corre	ct answer fron	n a, b, c, or d,
1.	Ali is			
2.	a) 8 All lives in the	b) 9	c) 10	d) 11 Years old
		b) century	c) month	d) year
		b) glass	c) plastic	and feathers d) iron
	a) third	b) second		d) first
Z	Choose the	correct answer f	rom a, h, c, or	d,
	We got a/an			to build our house.
2	a) doctor	b) builder	c) pilot	d) engineer
-	Abbas Ibn Firm			many useful inventions
3.	a) invented To	b) wrote	c) read	d) spoke
	a) hand		down until som	ething is on the ground
А	Birds have	b) land	•	d) run
7.			P 42 MANAGE - 47 444 713	all over their bodies.
-	a) feathers	b) meat	c) skin	d) bones
5.	A/An	is a per	son who makes	or designs new things.
	a) inventor	b) artist	c) doctor	d) pilot
3	Order the w	ords to make co	rrect sentence	ş.
1.	was - Abbas -	inventor - Firnas	- an - Ibn - ,	
2.	used - wings -	two - fly - to	- birds - like -	
2	Water Us al	noles invest t		

#### Lesson (7)

## Read the following text and answer the questions

Abbas Ibn Firnas was an important person who invented many things, including water clocks. He was very but he worked hard. He didn't want to stop working because of his age. He was the first person ever to fly using wings. So he became very famous.

0.	a la a	- orroct	SPEWOR	from		or	
A Choose	тпе	Correct	allawei	110111	 .,		

- 1. Clocks tell us the
  - a) time
- b) place
- c) weather
- d) action
- 2. Ibn Firnas became famous because he was the first man to
  - a) read
- b) write
- c) draw
- d) fly
- The underlined word 'old" here is the opposite of
  - a) big
- b) small
- c) young
- d) new

- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4. What was Abbas Ibn Fimas?
- 5. Did he stop working when he became old?
- (5) Write a text of rift. (50) words.

#### Abbas Ibn Firnas

#### **Guiding words:**

(inventor - 9th century - fly - feathers - famous)

## Writing Corner

### My new bike

Last week my grandpa bought me a new bike. It was a present for my birthday. It has two wheels, pedals and brakes. To make it move I have to push the pedals. It moves with push force. When I want to slow it down or stop it, I use the brakes. To move it faster, I push the pedals quickly. I like riding my new bike very much.

### A dart paper airplane

To make a dart paper airplane, take a piece of paper and fold in in half vertically. Crease it. Then open the paper. Fold over the top two corners. After that, turn the paper over. Fold it in half and crease the top of it. Then fold it down again and crease it again. Finally your dart is ready to fly!

From · Safia To : Anas

: A famous person Subject

How are you? I hope you are fine. I want to tell you about a famous person I read about. His name is Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was an inventor He invented many things like the water clocks. He was the first man to fly. He used wings made of wood and feathers.

Bye for now!

Safia

: Seif From : Amira To

: My future job Subject

How are you? I want to tell you about the job I'd like to do in the future. I want to be an astronaut. I like reading about stars and planets very

much. I like watching the stars. In space there's no gravity.

I'll float in space. What about you?

See you soon.

Self

Helo your child write a paragraph.

## Review on Unity

#### Forces

	درجة	friction	حنكاك
bike	فرامل	gravity	لعاقبة (الأرصية)
brake	عجلة	hook	صطاف
wheel	سرعة	spring	إمارك
speed	قوة الدفع	rope	هل
push force	قوةُ السحب	tire/tyre	جابر (العجبة)

#### School Subjects

iee	science فيزياء	75001000
physics	math	مادة الرياضيات
chemistry	math	is with the
architecture	English هسديه مصارية	~ ~ ~

#### Jobs

	web designer بديني	
astronaut		
	pilot	
engineer		طبيب
architect	doctor مهندسن معماري	
builder	سادلي بلاء	

#### Paper airplan

Dort	crease	
Dart Glider	vertically طائرة شراعية	راسيا ۱۰، ۱۰
tip	wing طرف	

#### Question tag

السؤال المذيل

It has two parts.

بتكون من جزئين.

a sentence, question tag?

#### Usage

We use it to check or confirm information.

نيتخدم السؤال المذيل للتحقق من المعلومات أو تأكيدها.

#### Form.

The question tag is formed of:

بنكون السؤال المذيل ص.

helping verb / modal verb + subject pronoun?

فعل مساعد

فعل ناقص

ضمير فاعل

#### Notes

- positive sentence, negative tag?
  - e.g. You live in Egypt, don't you?
- 2 negative sentence, positive tag?
- e.g. Ali didn't go home, did he?
- We use a comma before the question tag.
- e.g. He has played football, hasn't he?

## pictation on Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

دو سق ردال

Lesson (2)

Lesson (3)

المالية حس

ما يادو فيه سام ما يادو ديه

ء مشمث

. . . . . . العلما / ملمى

Lesson (4)

Lesson (5)

1-1

Lesson (7)

- lacet

### **Activities On Unit (4)**

الكتاب، المناع في نهاية الكتاب،

d) Aunt

### Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- 1. I usually get the . to school a) train c) bus b) metro d) car 2. I opened the car and got in a) window b) door c) balcony d) tire 3. The car was traveling at 40 kilometers a/an a) second b) minute c) hour d) week 4. I like it when takes me to school a) Dad b) Mom c) Uncle
- Read and complete the text with words from the box:

#### own - making - programs - company - doctor

Shaimaa wanted to be an engineer when she was 7 years old. She watched TV 1) about robots, and she loved 2) things. When she was 11, she started helping a robot design 3) online. Shaimaa is 24. She has started her

### Read the following text and answer the questions.

Abbas Ibn Firnas was an inventor. A long time ago, he invented many things, including water clocks. He also made some wings from wood and feathers. He then jumped from a tower and flew to the ground, but he didn't land well. Today, he is very famous because he was probably the first person ever to fly using wings.

## \_ Activities On Unit (4) -----

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- <sub>f. Abbas</sub> Ibn Firnas was a/an
  - a) pilot
- b) astronaut c) inventor
- d) engineer

- 2. He invented water
  - a) books
- b) clocks
- c) locks
- d) socks

and feathers.

- 3. He made some wings from
  - a) wool
- b) stone
- c) sand
- d) wood

- Answer the following questions.
- . Where did he jump from?
- i. Why is he famous today?



#### Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- The crocodile is a dangerous animal.
- 2. Gazelles can climb steep mountains.
- Jubari looked for Donga.
- The beach was too sandy.

#### B Complete the following sentences:

- 1. Jubari lived in Wadi
- 2. There were

trees in the desert.

### 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1.	There is less frict	ion when you walk	on a carpet than	on ice, the
	a) is	b) isn't	has	d) hasn't
2.	You live in Tharw	at Street,		· lia
	a) do	b) are	c) don't	d) aren't Your
3.		0 years old next m	onth,	· Sher
	a) can	b) will	c) won't	(I) (I) (I)
4	Your mom		make lovely	cakes, can't sho
	-/	b) may	a) will	d) must
5.	I have never bee	n to France,	only three constituted by the differ etters	1417000001
	a) have	b) haven't	c) do	d) don't
6.	Ali	SATURATOR A RESTRICT NO.	personer (ubbits mates (sees - p	go home, did he:
-	-\ don't	b) doesn't	c) didn't	d) isn't

#### 6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1. use You force jump a push to .
- 2. speed over Without fall will bike the you .
- 3 interested planets I am stars in and .

## Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Gravity

**Guiding words:** 

(pull - ground - down - float)

## مر الاستماع و نهاية الكتاب (2) On Review (2) معرالاستماع و نهاية الكتاب

## 1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

An oasis is a place in the which has lots of natural resources. d) bank

c) 200 b) desert a) park

people have lived in these cases for of years

d) tens b) hundreds c) thousands a) millions

is very important to grow crops.

di Mining b) Agriculture c) Sport a) Industry

: People can grow lots of different fruits and

d) wheat c) nce a) vegetables b) cotton

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

### jub - engineer - factory - luck - doctor

What would you like to do in the future? Mona

I'd like to be an 1) .... Soha

 Why do you like this 2) Mona

It's fantastic and I like maths. Soha

: Where will you work? Mona

: In a 3) ... Soha

: I wish you good 4) Mona

Thanks a lot. Soha

## (3) Read the forlowing text and answer the questions.

Abbas Ibn Firnas invented many things. One of his inventions was a form of water clock called Al-Maqata. When he lived in the ninth century. there were no watches or phones! People looked at the sun, moon, and stars to tell the time, but this didn't work inside buildings or on cloudy days. So, Abbas Ibn Firnas invented a different kind of clock. It didn't use the sun, moon, or stars - it used another natural resource - water! AI-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) - First Term 213

Help your child deal with such questions.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. 1. Abbas Ibn Firnas invented a clock that used b) water c) tea d) honey a) milk century, there were no watches or phones 2. In the c) 9th a) 18<sup>th</sup> b) 17<sup>th</sup> q) 50m 3. The word century means one b) hundred c) thousand a) decade d) million B) Answer the following questions. 4. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to? 5. What was the name of the water clock? The Reader Read and write T (True) or F (False). Wadi El Gemal was a perfect place for gazelles. 2. The crocodile was dangerous. 3. Jubari found wadi of the gazelles. Jubari wasn't brave.

2. The ...... offered Jubari some seagras

if he met a dangerous anima

Complete the following sentences:

1. Subira taught Jubari to

#### Review (2)

## (5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1					money,	ne'll b	uy a nev	A DIVE
	ii ne a) have	- 1	has	c)	had	4	having	sne?
2.	she is very happy,							She?
	a) is	b)	was		has		isn't	
3.	If we		to an oa	asis	, we would s	see pla	ants and	trees.
	a) QO		goes	c)	went	d)	going	
4.	They like museum	s,			w+ + 40 + 0 0 h		v41 ++ 17	tney?
			don't	c)	doesn't		are	
5.	She said she						like	pizza.
				c)	won't	d)	hasn't	
6.	Fares said he usua	ally				to the	sports of	enter.
•	a) goes		will go	c)	is going	c)	went	
			1	- A -				

#### (6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

- 1. pedals Without will the fall bike over using you the .
- 2. a rough has A glass texture window -
- 3. as used They honey a medicine .
- 7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

A job you'd like to do

Guiding words:

(grow up - would - architect - houses - buildings)

## Activities (2) On Review (2)

. بالتكاا قيام با ولعنها س

1.		was another	very important metal			
a) Coppe	er c) Gold	c) Silver	iron Iron			
lt was eas	y <b>to</b>		copper			
a) break	b) bend	c) heat	wy poil			
. People us	People used it to make					
a) spoon	s bowls	<ul><li>c) tools</li></ul>	uj forks			
We can see a lot of these objects in						
a) Spanis	sh b) English	<ul><li>French</li></ul>	museums.			
2 Read a	nd complete the text	while words from				

#### fertile - Egypt - Agriculture - crops - m. - can

Did you know that ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources? 1)

was a very important part of the economy of ancient  $\angle$ )

The Nile flooded every year and made the soil 3)

Farmers grew lots of different successful because it had the soil and made the soil and rice that the soil and rice th

#### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class has just come back from our school visit to Wadi el Gemal. We learned a lot about the ecosystem there. It's very hot and dry, but dorcas gazelles can live there. In summer they eat daffodils. They also eat the leaves of the acacia trees, which give them food and enough water. So, dorcas gazelles never need to drink. The gazelles eat the acacia seeds and take them to new places. Then more acacia trees grow. So, gazelles are an important part of the ecosystem.

Heriew (4)			
Meview (2)	nect answer from	na, b, c or d.	
a) Charles has it	ust come back from	m our school	to Wadi el Gemal.
a) club	b) visit	c) lab	a) library
a) Clos			in Wadi el Gemal.
cold	b) hot		a) heat
The underlined	d word "they" refers	s to	
	b) camels		o) gazelles
answer the for	lawing questions	ò,	
	lles need to drink?		
,			
What do gazelle	es eat?		
	The D	andar	
	(4) The R	eader	
A Kralland w	riteT (True) or F	(False).	
i. Jubari was a b	rave gazelle.		
Jubari met a tu	rtle on the beach.		
ن. Donga eats ve	-		
+. Subira is Jubar			-
B Lumplete	the following s		
1		ententes,	
2			Nasser is man-made
<ul> <li>Jubari met an .</li> </ul>			in Gehel Flha

....in Gebel Elba.

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, ., or d. 5

1.	a) go b) went c) goes d) will go					
	a) go	b) went	t c)	goes	d)	will go
2.	Fares said he					obita
	a) will	b) can	c)	could	d)	ride a bike
3.	They like museum	S.			•	
	a) are	b) aren	(c) t	do	d)	don't hey?
4.			,	beans	s if Lli	ved on a farm.
_	a) grows	b) would	d grow c)	3.4.	u)	WIII Orom
5	They said they			go	oing to	buy a house
		b) has	c)	were	d)	had
6.	The sky is going to	rain, .	4 4	* * ** ** ** ** **		
	a) isn't	b) is	c)	has		hasn't
6	Order the word	s to mal	e correct s	entencus		

- 1. friends .. : with played football his .
- into space stops @rawly people flying up .
- 3. you would ... 2. you do if had money a lot of ?
  - Write a text of ≈577 (56) words.

Salt

#### Guiding words:

(important - resource - sold - keep food - fresh - useful - lakes)

# FICTION READER: JUBARIJSEARCHES FOR HOME

جوباري يبحث عن موطن



BY JENNIFER FARMER

# The Story JUBARI SEARCHES FOR HOME

# Characters



Jubari (son)



Subira (mother)



dugong



turtle



Ibex



crocodile

# The Places



Wadi el Gemal



Ras Hankorab



Gebel Elba



The Red Sea mangrove



Lake Nasser

### The plot حبكة القعة

Jubari was a brave young dorcas gazelle. He was born in Wadi el Gemal. He left home to look for the " Wadi of the Gazelles". He went to lots of places and met many different animals. Jubari returned home because it is the best place to live in.

كان حودون عن أن معيدًا شحاعاً، وأد من أوادي " دعال"، عادر الموطن لينجيُّ عن "وادي القرَّالْيَا" فهن 

# What is the moral of the story? Sacal to Maint will be

Animals are happier in the ecosystem they are born in.

بعيش لحيوا بات البرود من "دنا "دنا والا والا المات المات

### Picture Dictionary



An acacia tree is a species of tree which grows in hot dry places.



Daffooils are species of yellow flower which grow from bulbs.



If you are brave, you are not afraid of dangerous or difficult situations.



A hoof is the hard foot of an animal. For example, horses, goats, and cows have hooves.

### **Nubian ibex**

الماعز التوبي



The Nubian ibex is a species of goat which lives in the mountains of northern Africa and the Middle East.

### salty

طعام مملح



Food with a lot of salt in it tastes salty.

### seagrass

اعشان تحرية



Seagrass is a species of plant which grows under the sea.

steep منجدا



A steep hill goes up or down very quickly, and so it is difficult to climb.

# the beginning

Jubari the dorcas gazelle was born in Wadi el Gemal in Egypt's Eastern desert. For the first year of his life, Jubari followed his mother, Subira. She showed him



which plants to eat and where to rest on hot days.

وساسران الصحراء الحماري في مادى الحمال في الصحراء السرفية بمصر، وفي أول عام من حياته، و فق "جودري" أمه اسويرا" وأوضحت له اي النباتات بإكلها وأين برتاح في الأبام الحارة

Jubari was very brave. He wanted to go everywhere and play with all the animals. However, Subira taught him which animals were dangerous and how to stay away from pregators. He learned to run away very quickly.



عن حدرى سحاعا حد به أد أن بدهب إلى كال مكان وسعب مع جميع الحيونات، ومع ذلك، علمته سويرا أي الحيوانات حطيرة وكيف بيقى بعيدا عن السيّوانات المفترسة، وتعلم أن يهرب بسرعة جدا،



One day, Jubari and Subira were looking for food. Jubari asked his mother, "Morn, what is this place called?"

Subira answered, "This is Wadi el Gemal, son It means "Wadi of the Camels."

"Why do we live in the Wadi of the Camels?" Jubari said. "We are gazelles."

Subira laughed. "It's only a name, son. Many animals live here. Wadiel Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles."

وفي أحد الرئيام كان "جوباري" و "سوبيرا" يبحلان عن الطعام، وسأل حوداري أمه قائلًا: " أميء ماذا يسمي هذا المكان؟" فرنت سوبيرا قائلة: "إنه وادي الجمال با بي، وهلى يعي "وادى به جمال"،

لل جوباري" "ولم نعيش في وادي الحمال؟ نعن غزلان"، ضعكت سوبيرا وقالت "إنه مجرد اسم يا بني، فالعديد من لعيوانات تعيش هنا، وادى الجمال مكان مثال للفالان".





"Why?" Jubari said. "Well." said his mother. "There are special plants here. First, there's our favorite food, the desert daffodil! And there is also the acacia tree. Their leaves give us food and water all year round, so we never need to drink. And the acacia trees need us, too."

"Why do they need us?" Jubari said.

"We eat their seeds and take them to new places. Then more acacia trees grow."

قال حودرى، لم؟ قالت أمه "وجد بباتات مميرة هنا، أولا، يوجد طعامنا المفضل، إنها زهور النرجس الصحراوية! كما يوحد أسجار السبط، وأوراقها سنانا بالطعاد و أساء على مدار العام لذلك لا تحماح أبدًا لأن نشرب، وكذلك فإن أشجار السنط تحتاجنا أيصار" قال جودري: "ولم تحتاجنا أشجار السنط؟" قالت الآم: "نحن تأكل بدورها وننقل هذه البدور لأماكن أحرى وجد سمو حريد بين شحار السنط

"I understand," said Jubari.

"But is there a place called 'Wadi of the Gazelles'?"

"I don't know," said his mother.

"I am going to look for it," said Jubari.

"OK," said his mother." But remember all the things I have taught you and come back soon!"

ن حدياً ي: العد فهمت، ولكن هن بوج علان يسمى و دي العرلان؟ قالت امد "ان لا أعرف." قال حوباري "سابحث عن ذلك المكان"، قالت أمه، حسنا، لكن تذكر كل الأشياء التي علمتُك إياها وعد سريعا"،





### Read and write I (Irue) or F (Fatse).

- 1. Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.
- 2. Jubari and Subira were looking for food.
- 3. Subira taught Jubari which animals were dangerous.
- Wadi el Gemal isn't the perfect place for gazelles.
- 5. The acacia trees leaves give gazelles food and water.
- 6. Acacia trees don't need gazelles.

### 2 Read and complete the sentences.

- 1. Jubari was born in
- 2. When Jubari was young, Subira taught him which
- Subira showed Jubari where to rest on.
- 4. Jubari and Subira's favorite food was
- They got en righ water from

### 3 Answer the following questions.

- What did Jubari the gazelle learn from his mother?
- What does Wadi el Gemal mean in English?
- What do Jubari and his mother eat in the Wadi?
- 4. What do Jubari and his mother drink in the Wadi?
- 5. How do gazelles help the acacia trees?
- Why does Juban leave the Wadi?

1 1/1/1/1/1

to eat

# the middle

Jupari decided to go east. He was excited, so he ran very quickly. Soon, he saw some new kinds of trees. He walked into the trees and stopped. His hooves were under water! Jubari was thirty, so



The water was very, very salty. Then he heard a voice. "You can't drink that water! It's sea water."

ه د عاده وسئي س . ل لعد كان لعد

Jubari looked and saw a big white animal in the water. It was looking at him. "I'm Donga. I'm a dugong. I live here in the mangrove forest by the Red Sea." "I'm thirsty," said Jubari.



"Would you like some of my - e ?" said Donga.

Jubari tried the seagrass, but it was very salty, too. "Thank you," he said." But the mangrove forest is too salty for me! Do you know where I can find the "Wadi of the Gazetles"?"

"I'm sorry." said Donga. "I don't know."

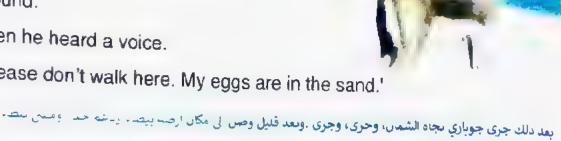
سه. قال الحديد ل من سال الما حيوان الأطوم وأما أعيش هذا د بال حوباري ان مصدن ١٠٠٠ و أبود بعضا من عشي البحري؟" و المعادل المع

Help your child read and follow the events of the . ١٠ ، المعان القصة.

Next, Jubari ran north. He ran and ran, soon he came to a place where the ground was white, and very soft. He walked slowly. His hooves were going into the ground.

Then he heard a voice.

"Please don't walk here. My eggs are in the sand."



وغاصت حوافره في الأرض، ثم سمع صوتًا يقول" من فضلك لا تمشي هذ قإن بيضي في الرمال."

Jubari looked. It was a brown turtle.

"I'm sorry," said Jubari.

"What is this place?"

"It's my home," said the turtle.

"Ras Hankorab beach."

'It's very nice," said Jubari.

"But it's not a good place for

gazelles. We can't run fast here because the sand is too soft."



تُعو جوباری، وکان دلك صوب سلحفهٔ شه، فان خوباری ۱۰ سب، ما شد. در ۱۰ د ب استخده از هد اساطی راس حبكورات. " قال جوباري" إنه مكان لطبق حدا بكية ليس مكان حيد بتعريان. فلا سكت أن تحري بيدعه عنا لان الرمال ناعمة حدًا." Jubari decided to go south. He ran and ran. He came to some mountains.
"I might see the 'Wadı of Gazelles' from the top," he thought.
Jubari climbed the biggest mountain.
It was very seep. His legs became very tired.



ـ رحودري ال بتحه سعبوب وجرى وحرى احى وصل إلى بعض الجبال واعتقد أنه ربما يرى وادي الغزلان من على العمة، تسلق جودري أكبر حبل وكان شديد الانعدار، وأصاب سيقائه الإرهاق الشديد.

Then he saw an animal,

a N .

Jubari said, "Hello! Have you
been to the top of this mountain?"

"Yes," said the ibex. "This is

Gebel Elba. It's my home."



"It's too steep for my legs,"said Jubari. 'Can you see the 'Wadi of the Gazelles' from the top?"

"I don't know that place." said the ibex "But I can see a very big lake to the west!"

ه أو الوشل النوى قال حونارى " ماحيا! هل كنت على قمه هذا الجبل؟ قال الوعل "نعم. هذا جبل عليه. إنه موطنى" قال جونارى انه شديد الانحدار بالنسبة بساق: هل يمكنك أن نرى وادي الغزلان من على القمة؟" قال الوعل! با لا إعرف هذا المكان." لكن بمكني أن أرى بحيرة ضخمة باتجاه الغرب."

Help your child read and follow the events of the

Jubari thought, "I've gone east I've gone south and north, but haven't gone west." He ran and ran. After a long time, he came to a very big lake. "What is this place?" he said. "This is Lake Nasser," said a voice. "It's a man-made lake. The people made it because they needed water. It's an important resource for them.



But delicious gazelles don't need water to drink, do they?"

فكر حوباري فائلا" بعد دهنت نجاه بشرق، ودهنت بعاد تعلمان والسيار بكن با أدهب بعاد العاب الداخان وجرى. وبعد مدة طويلة وصل إلى بحيرة ضخمة جدا وقال" ما هذا المكان ؟" ثم سمع صود يقول " هده تحتره عاصم نها بحيرة من صنع الإنسان، لقد صنعها الناس لأنهم كانوا في حاجة إن الماء، وهذا مصدر هام لهم، يكن العران لديدة لطعم لا يحتاجون إلى الماء، أليس كذلك؟ ا

Jubari couldn't see who was speaking. Then a dead tree in the water moved. It wasn't a tree! It was an animal!". "What are you?" said Jubari. "I'm a crocodile," said the animal. "This is my home, and I'm hungry" Jubari's mother taught him not to



stay near animals with big teeth, It was too dangerous!

الم استطع جوباري أن بري المنجدت ثم محركت شجره مينه في الماء. أنها لم يكن شجره! أنها كانت خيوان، قال ﴾ جوبايي "من أنت؟" فال الحبوان " أنا تمساح وهذا موطيء والا جوعان"كانت أم جوباري قد علمته ألا يعارب من لعيوانات ذات الإسنان لضحمة. وكان هذا خطعرا جم



## Read and write T (True) or f (False).

The first animal Jubari met was a dugong The sea water was fresh.

The mangrove forest is too salty for Juban.

Jubari can run fast in Ras Hankorab beach.

The Gebel Elba is very steep for Jubari's legs

Lake Nasser is a natural lake.

The crocodile looked like a dead tree in the water

### Read and complete the sentences.

### Answer the following questions

Where does the dugong live?

What lives on the beach?

The

3

Why did Jubari's legs become tired?

Where does the Nubian ibex live?

5. What does the crocodile look like?



He ran and ran a the way home to the Wadi el Gemal.

ثم جرى وجرى ..... طول الطريق لموطنه في وادي الجمال

He looked for Subira. "Mom! Mom!"
he cried. "Jubari, my brave and
curious son. You are home," his
mother said. Smiling, she asked,
"Did you find the 'Wadi of the
Gazelles'?" "No, I didn't. But I
found a lot of other places."
"Did you like them?" his mother asked.



'Not all of them The mangroves were too salty. The beach was too sandy. The mountains were too steep. And there weren't many acada trees.

وبدأ يبحث عن سوبيرا وهو تصرح وبقول. " أي ، أي ا فالت أمه وهي تنسم. حوياري وبدي السجاع و لقصولي، أنت الان في موطئك وسالته وهي تنسم. "هل وحدث وادي العرلان؟ قال حوياري" الاء لم احده " لكي وجدت لكثير من الامكن الأخرى سالته امه" الفن احتيب هذه الاماكر؟" قال حوياري " بنس جميع الاماكن، فشحار المتحروف كانت مالحة حدا والشاطي كان مليد بالزمال وكانت تحدل شديدة لاتحدار وتم يكن عدك لكثير من شحار استبطا.". JUBARI SEARCHES FOR HOME.



'Well, we have a lot of acacia trees here, and the desert is perfect for us o run and run!"

'Yes," said Jubari. "You were ... Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place or gazelles."

I'm so happy that you agree, she smiled



# Activities



### Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Jubari looked for Donga.
- Jubari was brave and curious.
- Jubari found Wadi el Gemal.
- The mangroves were too sweet.
- 5. The beach was too sandy.
- There were a lot of acacia trees in the desert.

### Read and complete the sentences.

- 1. Jubari was
- 2. The mountains were too
- 3. The desert was a
- 4. The
- There were many

### 3 Answer the following questions.

- What is the moral of the story?
- 2. Which ecosystem is very salty to uubari?
- What did Jubari look for at the end of the story? 3.
- Which ecosystem is too sandy for Jubari? 4.
- 5. Did Jubari find Wadı of the Gazelles?

and curious.

.... place for gazelles. 1 ... was too sandy. trees in the desert.



# Read and write I (True) or F (False).

Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.

Jupari wanted to find the Wadi of the Camels

The first animal he met was a dugong

He met a turtle, who was swimming in the sea.

He climbed down into a deep canyon

When he met a dangerous crocodile, he ran home.

### Choose the correct answer.

"What did Subira feach Jupari to do if he met a dangerous animal?

a) Shout for help.

b) Run away

Which animal offered Jubari some seagrass?

a) A Nubian ibex.

b) A dugong.

Why couldn't Jubari eat the seagrass?

a) It was too salty.

b) It was too wet.

Why did the turtie ask Juba i not to walk on the sand?

a) His hooves were too big. b) Her eggs were in the sand

Why was Ras Hankorab beach not a good place for gazelles?

a) The sand was too soft to walk on (b) The beach was too hot.

### 3 Read and write Yesor No.

<ol> <li>1.</li> <li>2.</li> <li>3.</li> </ol>	Daffodils give gazelles food and water all year around.  Acacia trees need gazelles because they take their seeds to new places.  Dugongs eat leaves from mangrove trees.						
<ul><li>4.</li><li>5.</li><li>6.</li></ul>	Dorcas gazelles find it easy to climb to the top of very steep mountains.						
7. 8.	A crocodile can look like a dead tree in the water.  Gazelles and acacia trees are part of the ecosystem in Wadi el Gemal.						
4	R	ead and circle.					
1.	_	pari and Subira live in					
2.	1	nen Jubari was young, Subira tau	b) ight h	the Wadi of nim which .	trie Gazen	to eat.	
	a)	animals	b)	plants		ŋ	
3.	Sul	oira showed Jubari where to res	t on	. , .	, ,	days!	
	a)	hot	b)	windy		,	
4.	Sub	oira taught him which			were dang	gerous.	
	a)	animals	b)	places		,	

90

# Listening Texts

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

isten and choose the correct answer.

Jabq is a very big National Park in South at Along the coast here, there are 4.8 meters of mangrove forest, which is the lest in the Red Sea. We went there to make mangrove forests are so ortant for the marine ecosystem. When arrived at the beach, we saw trees wing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow alt water, but mangrove trees can.

Lesson (3)

isten and choose the correct answer.

Malak wanted to learn more about the azon rainforest, because a lot of people cutting down the trees. The Amazon forest is a very important ecosystem. The living things in the rainforest need in other. Custard apple trees help many nals survive. The animals take the trees ds to other parts of the forest.

Anason (4)

isten and choose the correct answer.

A kingfisher was visiting her old friend, lizard in a mangrove tree. She flew down I sat next to the lizard. The lizard looked I. People came and cut down some es. The trees protected the worms and

the fish we eat, but now it's difficult for the kingfisher and the lizard to find food.

Lesson (5)

1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Eat healthy food like fruit, vegetables and fish .Play sports with your friends. Exercise regularly in the gym or outside. Keep moving. Walk, run, swim, or ride your bike.

Take some time to relax and be quiet.

Lesson (7)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer.

Waiting for the rain it was another long, hot day in the grassland. Cub was with his mother, and he lay in the sunshine. But his mother looked worried.

Activities On Unit (1)

1. Listen and choose the correct answer.

Your heart beats more over 100 000 times a day! So it's important to keep your heart healthy. When you walk, run, swim, or cycle, you make your heart work harder. If you exerc se regularly, your heart works better and you can get the minerals, nutrients, and oxygen you need more easily.

### Unit (2)

### Lesson (1)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer

### Victoria Falls

This enormous waterfall is on the Zambezi River on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. It's 1,708 meters wide and 108 meters high. Every minute, over 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon which the water has eroded. When the water falls, it makes a lot of noise!

### Lesson (4)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Kamal has been to many places with his parents. They saw heavy snow in the mountains, flood in Sudan and amazing show people keeping bees. dust storms in the desert. He has learned a lot about extreme weather.

### Activities On Unit (2)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Moun Kiliman, aro is made of three volcanoes, but they haven't erupted for thousands of years. It is the tallest mountain soft banana and says its not hard, I can in Africa. It has lots of different ecosystems, bend it and it has an odor. It's a banana and at the top there is snow and ice

### Activities On Review (1)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The Victoria Falls is an enormous waterfall on the Zambezi River. Every minute, 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big canyon which the water has eroded. The water makes a lot of noise as it falls!

### Unit (3)

### Lesson (1)

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer

It's summer and Salma and her family are going to Marsa Alam for a holiday. Salma looks out of the car window and sees a sign to the Sukari gold mine. Mine Is a place where we get raw materials from the ground, like gold and coal.

### Lesson (3)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answ.

Egyptians used honey to make medicine. It was very important for he plng with problems with the skin or eyes. There are nieroglyphics in ancient temples which

### Lesson (4)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mona and Heba are in the living room. They play a game Mona's mom got something from the kitchen. Heba asks Mona to close her eyes. Mona picks up a

### Lesson (7)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer.

logay we're going to do a science experiment. You can work in groups of three There is a solid object in one box, and a container of liquid in another box. You have to study them and answer some questions.

### Listening Texts

### Activities On Unit (3)

# 1. Listen and choose the correct answer.

peuple in ancient Egypt used mud to puild houses and other buildings. They ook it from the Nile when it was soft and made it into square bricks. These were hard and strong when they dried.

### Unit (4)

### Lesson (1)

### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer.

Lusually get the bus to school, but Dad took me to school today. I opened the car door and got in. It didn't take long to get to school. I thanked my dad, and closed the car door. I was early so I had some time to talk to my friends

### Lesson (4)

### Listen and choose the correct answer.

Grandpa showed the children a pair of shoes. "They don't look like normal snoes." said Hady. "You're right," Grandpa replied. 'Let's go outside. I'll show you what the shoes an do." Hoda and Hady followed Grandpa but of the house to a hill. They were very excited. They sat down and Grandpa took hree pairs of shoes from a bag.

### Lesson (5)

### - Listen and choose the correct answer

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when ne was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things. When he was 13, he started heiping a robot design company online.

### Lesson (7)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer

Ali is 10 years old. He lives in the 9" century. One day, He saw an inventor called Abbas Ibn Firnas. He was trying to fly like birds. He used wings made of wood and feathers. He flew from a top of a tower. But he couldn't land correctly. He hurt himself. He was the first man to fly

### Activities On Unit (4)

### 1- list is and choose the correct answer

I usually get the bus to school, but Dad took me to school today. I opened the car door and got in. Dad started the car and when we passed the park, the car was travelling at 40 kilometres an hour. I like it when Dad takes me to school

### Activities (1) On Review (2)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer

An oasis is a place in the desert which has lots of natural resources. If water didn't come from under the ground, the plants wouldn't grow. It you visited an oasis, you would see beautiful trees and flowers in the middle of the desert. People have lived in these cases for hundreds of years.

Agriculture is very important and people can grow lots of different fruits and vegetables

### Activities (2) On Review (2)

### 1- Listen and choose the correct answer

Copper was another very important metal. It was easy to bend, and people used it to make tools, cooking pots, and knives, as well as jewelry. We can see a lot of these objects today in Egyptian museums.

### Model Answers

#### Lesson (2) Let's remember 1) Road and complete the text with words from the bext f) thoose the confect answer. 11 homework 2) where 3) which 1) who Presentation 3. blogs 6) who 5) which 7) Who. 4) viogs 2) Choose the correct answer. 10) Who 11) Where 9) which had 2 made 13) who 14) Where 15) who 3 i Vlogs 5) largest 18) who 6 Reptiles 17) where 19) where 7) invertebrate 8: deaf primary 2) head and complete with the consenform. Order the words to make consect sentences 1) who 2) who 3) which Cairo is the largest city in Egypt. 6) where 5) which 7) who Airplanes will use solar energy in the future. LE33611 (3) We're talking about recycling today i) Listen and choose the correct answer. 4 We often eat our meats with bread. 1) ecosystem 2) living 3) survive What are you doing at the moment? 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box s) Practuate the following 1) do 2) photographer - The store sells clothes jewelry and bags 4) Custard apple 3) acosystem - Do Fares and rasmine live in Luxor By Choose the centert answer. Will you stay in Amman when you visit Jordan? 1) patient 2) down 3) beauty Unit ( 1) 5) success 4) patience 6) lucky 8) patience 9) acosystem 10) seeds lesson it i 4) Order the words to make correct sentences. 1) Listen and choose the correct answer. 1) People cut down trees in the rainforest 2) mangrove 3) manne 2) The Amazon rainforest is a very important Read and complete the text with words from the box ecosystem. 2 Sinai 4) fish 31 marine 3) Luck is also quiet important. 3) Choose the correct answer. 4) Your exhibition is a great success. largest • 2 important 3) thick 4) survive 5) You need to have a lot of patience honey € interact 7 iliving 8) salt 5) Read the text and answer the questions. ), protect 10 carbon dioxide A)Choose the correct answer. 1 idnesses 12) interact 1) photographer 2) Malak 3) rainforest 4) Order the words to make correct seatences. B)Answer the following questions 1 Mangrove trees help young fish survive Because a lot of people are cutting down the trees. An ecosystem is ail the animals and plants in an area, She wanted to show people how all the parts of 3 Mangrove eaves are very thick, the forest ecosystem interact. Read the text and answer the questions. 6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about. AiChoose the correct answer (The Amazon rainforest) ecosystem ? animais The Amazon rainforest is a very important

5 To survive 6) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about

4. It's all the animals and plants in an area

B) Answer the following questions

rich grove forustrij. The mangrove forest is very important for the marine ecosystem. It is the largest forest in the Reo Sea The mangrove trees can grow in sait water. Their roots are deep to stop the sand washing away when there are storms. Their leaves are very thick. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot

#### Lesson (4)

ecosystem. All the living things in the rainforest need

each other. Custard apple trees help many animals

survive. The animals take the trees seeds to other parts

4) Who 3

B) where

12) which

16) Which

20) Who

4) Who

8) which

7) beauty

1) Listen and chouse the correct answer.

of the forest. All the parts of the forest

- cut down 4) lizard 1) kingfisher 2) sad
- 2) Choose the correct answer.

ecosystem interact.

- 3) Worried 1) protect 2) food
- 7) bees Surprised 5) cut down 6) worried

### **Model Answers**

flead the text and answer the questions Acknows the correct answer. 3) lizard 1) Far the following questions. in a mangrove tree. Because people cut down trees. order the words to make correct sentences The dugong says that the people are back How will you help the trees grow? Paode came and cut down some trees Mangrove trees are part of the ecosystem.

#### Lesson (5)

|| Listen and choose the correct answer 2) sports 4 relax g feed and complete the text with words from the box 2) heart 3) exercise 4 oxygen 1) begts floose the correct answer. veins and arteries 2) Arteries 4) oxygen and nutrients hi sunlight 3) Veins i lead the text and answer the questions Dichoose the correct answer. 2 sunlight n blood flanswer the following questions () Our circulatory system. 3 Through arteries and veins i) Order the words to make correct sentences. I) I play sports with my friends 2) How often does your heart beat? 1) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: (How to keep your heart healthy)

It is important to keep your heart healthy. To keep your heart healthy, eat healthy food like, fruit, vegetables, and fish. You should play sports with your friends. You must keep moving. Walk, run, swim, or ride your bike. Take some time to relax and be quiet.

### Lesson (6) 1) Read and complete the text with words from the bux

2) volleyball

il about a cour		-	
3) Fridays		4 aund	
2) Choose th	o correct answer.		
1) because	2) 90	3) and	4) bul
5) and	6) but		8) because
9) 80	10) and	11) because	
12) but	13) because		
3) Road and	complete with the	in carrect form	i.
1) but	2) because	3) but	
4) and	5) 80		
4) Write a to	KL of FIFTY (50)	words about:	

1) snorts center

(How to keep healthy).

You should play sports with your friend it you want to be healthy. You should exercise regularly. Healthy food is also important. You should have healthy food like fruit, vegetables and fish. You can play tennis or football.

The football club is popular so there are always a of of people

### Lesson (T)

	FC230	11 [7]					
1) Ustan a	ind choose the corr	ect suswer.					
hot	Cub	sunshine	womed				
2) Choose	the correct answer						
grow	rain	hungry	falking				
) <b>W</b> II	won't	will	can't				
) Can							
3) Read the text and answer the questions							
A)Choose ti	he correct answer						
1) grasslan	d 2 Mother	3 club					
B) Answer ti	he totlow ny qu 💈	003					
4) She felt i	worned.						
-	is won't grow.						
4) Order th	e words to make co	priect seatences					
4 li We will b	e very hungry						

The grassiand is an important ecosystem. It is hot Some animals live in grassland. When it rains, the grass grow. The animals will find their food, if it doesn't rein. the grass won't grow. It's difficult for animals to find their

They must wait for rain.

Can we catch a rabbit to eat?

5) Write a text of FIF (1 (50) word, about

food All living	things need	each other to s	ITIA JAB			
two to	Activity o	a voit († )	*			
t) Listen and	choose the co	pect answer				
1 beats	healthy	heart	exercise			
2) Read and co	emplate the b	ut with words fi	om the box			
blead		Artenes				
oxygen		carbon did	pxide			
3) Read the to	est and allawe	r the questions				
A)Choose the o	offect answer					
	mangrove		insects			
B]Answer the	fallouing que	Stient				
		ds of fish, birds,	insects			
and other a						
Bees make a special honey from the mangrove flowers						
4) The Reader						
A) Read and w	nite [ ( itue)	or F ( False;				
11 T		5, T	, F			
B) Complete t	he following :	semicosc*				
1) hot						
5) Choose the correct unswet						
		3) where				
		6) because				
6) Order the woods to man contact neatences						
What lives in mangrove forests?						
Waei likes fish, but he doesn't like lamb.						

Seleem eats healthy food like fruit.

### 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about

There are different kinds of ecosystems. There are rainforest ecosystem, manne ecosystem, grassland ecosystem, treshwater ecosystem and forest ecosystem. in an ecosystem, living things such as plants and arimals interact with non-living things such as water, rocks and soil They need each other to survive.

### Unit (2)

#### Lesson [1]

- 1) Lesten and choose the correct answer
- Zambezi 1,708 3) high 4) noise
- 2) Road and complete the text with words from the box countries 3) dunes
- 3) Read the text and answer the questions
- he Choose the correct answe

voicanoes thousand

C. Answer the following questions

Mount Kilimanjaro

At the top of the mountain,

4) Order the words to make correct sentences

How tall is Mount Klimanjaro?

The Sahara Desert is the hottest desert in the world The African continent is an amazing place.

5) Choose the correct answer

crater 2 dunes canyon

Erupt : valley

6) Write a text of FIFTY (SG) words about

The African continent is an amazing place, with mountains, deserts, lakes, valleys, and rainforests. There are beautiful coasts, waterfalls, and volcanoes It has some of the most famous natural wonders in the world. Mount Kilimaniaro is one of them. It's the taliest mountain in Africa. The Sahara Desert is the largest hot desert in the world

### Lesson [2]

#### The past simple

It Choose the correct asswer

Minni play visited

did 5 didn't

2. Order the words to make correct sentences

I made a cup of lea. What did you sat vasterday? Did you travel on a ship yesterday?

- 4: We did our homework an hour ago
- > They didn't eat ful medames.
- 3) Read and complete with the correct form

traveled 2 went 3) met

1 studied traveled

### The present perfect

1) Choose the correct answer.

to has traveled 2) has told

3) has made 4) have never sailed 5) mel

2) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Have you ever traveled to Luxor?

- 2) She has visited a traditional market
- Sara has never traveled to Aswan.
- 4) Have they ever visited another country?
- 5) He has never eaten saydeya.
- 3) Read and complete with the correct form

1) S<del>ee</del>n 2) never

4) Has 5) ever

#### Activities

1) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) holiday

2) visited

3) trave.

4) Went

2) Choose the correct answer

i) has ealen in Has

- 2) haven't visited 4) have told
- 5) fraveled 71 have
- 6) Have you eaten
- 8) ever have never 10) made

### Lesson (3)

- i) Read and complete the text with words from the box.
- 1) man-made 2) Egypt

3) Kings 4) history

- 2) Read the text and answer the questions
- A)Chaose the correct answer
- 1, centuries 2) South Africa
- B) Answer the following questions
- () The rulns of Great Zimbabwe
- 5. South Africa and Namibia
- 3) Choose the correct answer
- ti continent 2) wonders

3) Archaeologists 5. adventure

4) ruins temples

5) columns 8) natural

3) caves

(i) language (1) Walk

4) Order the words to make correct sentences.

The Sahara Desert wasn't dry in the past Visitors can see birds and monkeys in Rwanda There are 54 countries in Africa.

The natural word is beautiful in Africa

#### Lesson (4)

) Listen and chause the correct answer

4) weather parents 2) anow 3) desert

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box

, storm-chasers extreme

2) hurricane 4) study

3) Choose the correct answer

ti storm-chaser

2) thunderstorm

(a) hurricane

4) flood

5) took

6, dust storm

7) won-

8) weather

### Model Answers

- Order the words to make correct sentences. Has he taken hundreds of photos?
- 2 Heavy snow fell on the mountain Means are interested in thunderstorms
- They look some photos of the hurricane
- s) write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The storm-chaser is the person who travel to places where a hurricane or another form of extreme weather event to study it. He is a good photographer. He takes photos of foods thunderstorms and dust storms. It's a very interesting job

### Lesson (5)

- || Head and complete the text with words from the box. 3) volcanoes 4 villages
- 2) lava 2) Choose the correct answer.
  - 3) mud flow
- 2) erupt 1 lava
- 6) sland
- prash d) soil
- 3) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### The land of payar

The sland of Java is very pretty island, where almost everything is made of availt comes from Javas volcances, which look down on the villages below. When they erupt, there's ash and fire. Smoke tills the air. The lava and ash mix with mud flows. This makes sor where good food grows.

### Lesson (6)

- 1) Read and complete the text with words from the Lox
- 2) lake 1) arches
- 4) erodeo 3) sandstone
- 2) Choose the correct answer
- 5) ride 4 SUR 1) Bridge in eroded
- 5) formation (6) sandstone (7) summer (8) rocks
- 3) Read the text and answer the questings
- A)Choose the correct answer
- 1, geologica 2, imestone 31120
- B)Answer the following questions.
- 4) The Pinnacies
- 5) Early in the morning or late afternoon
- 4] Order the words to make correct sentences
- h Hambow Bridge is 200 million years old
- . A aver eroded a hole in the sand sinne
- g The monument is in a very hot desert
- 4 Don't for jet to take your water bottle

#### Lesson (7)

- 1) Read and complete the text with words from the bur
- ) excited | | statues tritickets 2 ballion
- 2) Choose the correct answer
- baskets , gentia ng light. h ribbon
- is pilet. 5) Flame
- 3) Order the words to make correct sentences.
- 1. Mariam loved watching birds

- 2) The book is about hot air balloon flights.
- 3. Would you like to have a ride?
- 4) Read the text and answer the questions
- A)Choose the correct answer
- 3 excited ty birds Zi Luxon
- B) Answer the following questions
- 5, Mariam's dad 4) It was a diary.
- 5) Write a test of FIFTY (50) words about

#### A fricion a hot ar our ust .

I went on a trip to Luxor I had trokets for the Luxor not air balloon festival. I found the diary of the pilot. He lit the flame. The weather was perfect, with no rain and a gentle wind. We few over the statues and temples

### Acavity on unit (2,

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer
- three 2, years 3 Africa
- 2) Read and complete the fext with words from the box
- storm-chasers u grandparents
- 4 weather 5) hurricane
- 3) Read the text and answer the questions
- A Choose the correct answer.
- 1) Bridge 2 1910 3. spring
- 6) Answer the following questions
- 4 It is 88 meters tall
- You have to take a boat, ride a horse, or walk to it
- 4). The Reade:
- AfRead and write T (frue or F (rais.)
- 4 F .T 2 T 3 F
- 5) Complete the following sentences
- 3 saity 4 white
- b) Choose the correct arriver
- never did
- 🧧 ate 5 been a) visited
- t) Order the words to E un correct sentences
  - Have Kamal's parents been to Sudan? We have got tickets for the festival.

The Sahara Desert covers eleven countries

7) Reite a text of FIFTY (50) words about

There are many man-made wonders in Egypt. The Sphinx is one of them. The Ancient Egyptian built it at Giza, It has the head of a man and a body of a lion, it is fantastic. Tourists from all over the world come and watch it There are others in Africa and Egypt.

### Activities on Review 111

- t) Listen and choose the cornect answer
- on erroded i i five
- 4) water
- 2) Read and complete the test with worth from the box
  - Archaeologists man made
  - 4) volcano i naturali

3 Read the text and answer the questions	
those the same suswer the questions	They are clean and never run out. Solar energy is renewable energy, Non-renewable energy isn't clean. Who
fainforest calm scare	
DIAnswer the following enesti.	lossil fuels, we can't use them again.
Monkeys, snakes, birds, and gorillas.	Lesson (2)
You must be very quiet	Lesson (r)
4) The Reader	Conditional (if)
CRend and a dr. of	I) chaose the contest answer.
T False	
T F	
n = 14	met (i) will
	7 met 8) will 9) has 10) would 2) Read and complete with the correct form
of thoose the toriett allawer.	-) warm and combiece with the contact total
because	service ( ) color
	would () catch (6) won't (7) had
6) Order the words to make correct sentences	Activities
The beautiful natural world is in Africa.	1) Read and complete the text with words from the but
The Amazon rainforest is an important ecosystem	mountains 2 bones 3 digging shove
THE BUT THE THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF THE	2) Choose the correct answer
/) Write a test of HETY (0) words mout	1) bones 2) digging 3) in
	skeletons El shovel 3 will
1 get up at six o'clock I have healthy breakfast to	had 8 would 3 stay
To requiry, I walk every day and I pley sports with	5) Read the text and answer the questions.
mence i has realthy food like that and vegetables I sake	Alhoose the correr
bed early because I don't want to be tired in the morning.	last week 2 8 classmates
11.73	or figure 15 february
	We saw really big dinosaur skeletons
Lesson ( )	It is fantastic.
1) tisten and choose the correct answer.	my wider the muids to make currect sentences.
Marsa Alam car	They are going to the mountains
gold raw	What would you do if you had a bike?
2) Read and complete the dialog with acros from the box	I found some dinosaur bones
	5) write a text of FFFT (5.1) words about:
3) Choose the correct answer	to be to for the form
etato a hold	I went to the Egyptian Geologica Museum. I we
116026	with my friends. We want by sebast him to
andid Water Transition	with my triends. We went by school bus. We saw real
solid 10 raw wood fossil	big dinosaur skeletons. The museum is fantastic. The
	guide told us interesting information about dinosaura We came back home at eight o'clock.
4) head and complete the test with words from the box.	
i boiled steam froze ice	Lesson (3 )
5) Order the words to make correct sentences.	1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
A solid has a fixed shape	Egyptians 2) Important 3) eyes 4) bees
The sun gives us solar energy.	dy should the correct answer.
3. When you boll water, it turns to steam.	at successfu 3 economy 4) fertile
6) Read the text and answer the questions,	flax () fresh   bend   B) hives
A Chocs	medicine to mud
in natural resources Gold natural	3) head the test and answer the questions.
B) Answerth Let	1 " (" (1) Co f " dett
1 The aun	honey : hives : cheap
5) Because when we burn fossil fuels, we can't use	Luzace (1 - In toward dues 1)
them again.	They put honey on the cut.
/) Write a text of the Y (t) worms about.	So that the bees could find new flowers
	4) Order the words to make correct sentences.
There are two kind of resources. They are renswable	The Nile flooded and made the soil fertile
and non-renewable. Renewable energy like sun and wind.	People used flax to make linen
with the same works to be a same and the same and mind.	Leohie nead list to wake liveu

### Model Answer

3) And ent Egypt was very successful.
5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about

People kept bees to make honey in ancient Egypt.

They used honey to make food tasts sweet. They used
they used honey to make food tasts sweet. They used
it as a medicine, too. If you cut yourself, you could put
honey on the cut. Bees lived in houses made of clay. The
honey on the cut. Bees lived in houses made of clay. The
bee houses are called hives. People moved the hives, so
the bees could find new flowers.

### Lesson ( )

		and	choose	the	correct	answer ar her e
0	Fiètea	6110	O L PROV	าดก		ar her e

- 1) living room 2) moon whereves banana
- al theose the correct anchier.
- 1) Blind 2 odor sticky mass 6, liquid Steam
- 6) gas
  6) comfortable 9) sticky
  6) hard
- 3) Read the text and answer the questions
- A)Choose the
- happy ocomfortable
- B)Answer the 1
- 4) Because her cousin has just arrived from Alex.
- 5) It is rough, and it has an odor.
- 4) Order the words to make correct sentences
- t) The glue is sticky
- 2) Welcome to my house.
- 3) What are the chairs like?
- 5) Write a text of > leli ( '%) words about:

Strawberry is a delicious fruit. It has a red color. It is a solid. It has a soft touch. You can feel the texture of the strawberry. It's soft but you can't bend it. It's a healthy fruit.

#### Lesson (\*)

- 1) Read and complete the text with words from the box
- 1) do experiment i pour il mix
- 2) Choose the correct answer.
- 1) do 2) container 3) detergent 4 sticky
- 5) layer 6) syringe iniquid sink
- hitloats 10 syrup
- 3) Read the test and answer the questions
- A)Choose the correct answ
- Lion foot 315 sink
- BjAnswer the following q
- b) A science experiment.
- · Because it is interesting.
- 4' Order the words to make correct sentences
- ti Honey is thick and slicky
- 1 The heavier liquids sink to the bottom
- Milk and water are liquids.
- 5) Write a text of clinic (ov) words about

Today we're going to do a science experiment. What happens when we pour different liquids into one

container? They mix together. Liquids have a different mass. The heavier liquids sink to the bottom. The liquids with a lower mass float on top.

### Lesson { }

- Read and complete the dialog with words from the box went waterfalls / flamingo -- enjoy
- 2) Choose the correct answer

7	£410m3 44 1.45.	Caral Lines Communication		
	on	oasis	-	bird
	coastiine	orchards		OF
	husav	farmino		

3) Read, the text and answer the questions

Damietta popular vacation

They are places where fruit trees are grown tts history

4) Write a feet of | | 1 words about

I went to a school trip last Friday. I went with my friends. We went to Alexandria Library. We went by school bus. We met the librarian and saw many books. They library is fantastic it's very enormous. We enjoyed a lot. We learnt more about its history.

### Lesson ( )

#### Reported speech

t) Choose the correct answer.

liked had could was can

2) Choose the correct auction

loves can worked liked was wanted

Read and complete with the correct form could played said would went

#### Activities

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer
- experiment groups
- ?) Choose the correct answer

with liquid could went liked was

go can need I was
3) Read the text and answer the questions

subject Science school

He went on a school trip to the Science Museum About the environment.

4) Order the words to make correct sentences

- Do you need to borrow a calculator? I like visiting the park
- : Let's do a science experiment.

- 4) Mom said it was cold and rainy.
- 5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

(A visit to the museum)

I went to a visit to the museum. I went with my family. We went in our father's car. We saw many old things that were precious. We enjoyed our trip a lot because it was amazing. We want back home tired but we were happy.

### Activity on unit (3)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
- 1) mud 2. Nile 3) bricks 4) strong
- 2) Read and complete the text with words from the box. 1) Alexandria 2) train 3) visited 4) епюч
- 3) Read the text and answer the questions
- A) Choose the correct answer.
- 1) city 21 early
- 3) one
- B) Answer the following questions.
- 4 The traffic is always busy on her way to school.
- 5) Big and very exciting.
- 4) The Reader
- A) Read and write T ( True) or F ( False).
- 2. 1 31 F 41 F. B) Complete the following sentences
- 3) **Lake** 4) teath
- Choose the correct asswer. 1) ate
- 2 will 3) had 4: would 51 could 6) does
- 6) Order the words to make correct sentences.
- Comi and gas are non-renewable resources.
- People make linen from flax.
- 3. Who liked honey in ancient Egypt?
- 7) Write a text of FIFTY 50 ) words about

(Papyrus)

Ancient Egypt was very successful because it had good natural resources. They had papyrus They used this strong plant to make things such as basket and sandals, but the most important thing they made from it was paper. The ancient Egyptians made some of first books in the world using it.

#### Unit (4)

#### Lesson (1)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
- 1) bus 2) Dad 3) thanked 4) friends
- 2) Choose the correct answer.
- 1) blice 2) cycle 3) science 4) pedals 5) brakes 7) up 8 brakes
- 6 speed 9) **pull** 10) cycling
- 3) Read the text and answer the questions.
- A)(hoose the correct answer
- 2) arrive 3) Dad
- B) Answer the following questions
- 4. At 40 kilometera an hour

talked to my friends.

### 4) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your new bike)

My birthday is today. My parents bought me a new bike as a present They teach me how to ride the bike. I learned how to move it I push the pedals to move the bike. To make the bike stop, I use the brakes, If I want lo increase the speed, I push the pedals more quickly.

#### Lesson (2)

### Question tag

- 1) Choose the correct answer.
- I) is 2) did 3/ Will
- 4) cant 5) won't
- 2) Read and complete with the correct form.
- 1 won't 2) live 3) can't 4) Went

#### Activities

- 1) Read and complete the text with the words in the box.
- 1) What 2) scientist 3) gravity 4) didn (
- 2) Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box.
- 1) friction 2) pull 4) smaller 5) space
- 3) Choose the correct answer. 1 Frection
  - 2) tension Air resistance
- 4) Spring force 5) Gravity 6) didn't they
- 7 can't they B) will he 9) .s it
- 10) they
- 4) Order the words to make correct sentences.
- 1 It won't rain tomorrow, will it?
- 2) Your mom doesn't speak French, does she?
- She didn't have chicken, did she?
- 5) Complete the question tags.
- 1 does 2) won't J car t
- 4. did 5, dont

#### Lesson (3)

- 1) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.
- i, paper
  - 2) vertically
- 3) over

2

3

B

4

5

И

3) slowly

- Read and complete the text with words from the box. 1, prece 2) top 4) down
- 3) t.p. 3) Write a test of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### (A Dart paper airpiune)

To make a paper airplane, Fold a piece of paper in half vertically. Open the paper. Fold over the top two comers. Turn the paper over, Fold it in half and crease it. Fold down the two wings. Your dart is ready to IIIy

### Lesson (4)

- 1) Listen and choose the correct answer.
- 1, shoes 2) normal 3) hill 4) excited
- Read and complete the text with words from the box. 2) higher D up
- 3) sides 3) Order the words to make correct sentences
- I) Grandr I

### Model Answers Do you have something to show us? Do you have anjoy flying above the village. The children enjoy flying above the village. Lews fall to the ground in fall. flower the text and answer the questions. throse the correct answer. Maswar the following questions. To watch his favorite football team. Gravity. Lesson (5)

A Listen and choose the correct answer . thirteen zi robots 3 making ı erigineer Choose the correct answer asironaut 2) float Engineers (, Air resistance 5) pilot order the words to make correct sentences ascience She has good computer skills. An architect designs new buildings. We can travel on an aircraft. flead the text and answer the questions phoose the correct answer. 3) Dália 2) health Maswer the following question

5) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about I like science very much, I want to be an engineer when I grow up. It is an interesting job. An engineer can tesign new buildings. He can make bridges. An engineer toesn't make buildings and bridges only. An engineer

She likes working with people and she'd like to

### Lesson (7)

also he ps make things such as skateboards.

### l) Listen and circle the correct answer

4 first 2) century 3 wood

) Choose the correct answer

2) invented 3 land ) builder

) feathers 5) inventor

) She enjoys traveling.

work in medicine.

I Order the words to make correct septences

Abbas Ibn Firnas was a inventor.

He used wings to fly like birds

He invented water clocks.

Read the test and answer the questions

Choose the correct answer

time · 21 fly 3) young

Answer the following questions

He was an important person who invented many things. 5' No,he didn t

Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about

Abbas (bo F mail)

Abbas ibn Firnas was an inventor in the 9th century. was trying to fly like birds. He used wings made of ood and feathers. He flew from a top of a tower. But he

couldn't land correctly. He hurt himself. He was the first man to fly.

	r 11 1	against 871	
ty Listen and choc 1) bus cy 2) Read and compl 1) programs 2) 2) Read the fext	door iete the text	hour with words from a company	Dad the hos
A)(hoos, the form 1) inventor 2) Planswer the following	clocks owing aues	3 wood	
1.1 Summed from	n a tower. as probably	the first person	ever to
, Kead and with.  T 'An over the fall	F	F (1982)	Т
o el Gemal	acacia rect answe don't	SI WON'T	
4) can 5 6) Order the work You use a push	ds to make	Collect senicate	2.5
Without speed	you will fal In stars ar	l over the bike. nd planets	

Gravity is what makes things fall to the ground. It is the force that makes leaves fall to the ground in fall and not float above the tree. When the boy jumps on the bed, gravity brings him down and stops him floating up into the air it is also the force that keeps the planets moving around the sun.

#### Activities (1) on Revie sten and choose the correct answer desert hundreds Agriculture vegetables Pearl and complete the disting with words from the box engineer doi factory 1 luck I) Read the text and answer the guastions .. Chaose the corre water 2 1 **9**th hundred Answer the follows Abbas Ibn Firnas. 5) Al-Magata. 4) The Reader sal dill more of the port fiction Τ B)Complete the following sentences. i) fun away 2, dugong 5 Choose the correct answer □ has

3 want

3) Answer the following questions, 51 didn't She laught him which animals were dangerous and 6) Order the words to make correct sentences how to stay away from predators. 1) Without using the pedals you will tall over the bike. 2) The Wadl of the Camela. 2) A ginss window has a rough texture. They used honey as a medicine. 3) Daffodil and acacia. 7) Write a text of FIFTY (SC) words about: 4) The acadia free leaves give them water. 5) They take their seeds to new places. the object time to do When I grow up, I want to be an architect. This is the 6) To look for the Wadi of the Gazelles. job t like. It is interesting. I like drawing and making things Activities (P. 229) so I want to be an architect. The architect can design 1) Rood and write True (T) or Falso (F). many houses. He also can design building and houses. 1) T 2) F Activities (2) on Review (2) 6) F 5) T Z) T f) listen and choose the correct ensurer. 2 bend 2) Road and complete the sentences. 3) tools 4 Egyptian 1) salty - 2) dugong 3) sand Read and complete the text with words from the box. 5) Ibex 6) steep 4) hooves 1) Agriculture 2 Egypt 7) dangerous 8) grocodile 4. Crops 3) Answer the following quest lons. 3) Read the text and answer the questions. 1) In the mangrove forest. 2) The turtle. A) Choose the correct answer. 3) Because the mountain was very steep. 2 cold 3 gazelles 4) In Gebel Elba. -5) A dead tree. B) Answer the following questions. 4 Because the acacia trees give them food and enough Activities (P. 232) water 5) Acacia seed. 1) Road and write True (T) or False (f). 4) The Reader. 1) F . 2) T . . . A Read and write I firms) or F (False) 5) T 6) T 1 7 2 7 3 F 2) Read and complete the sentences. B)Complete the following sentences 1) brave 2) steep 3) pertect 1 Lake 2 iber 4) beach 5) acacia 5) Choose the correct answer. 3) Answer the following questions. 1) went 2 could 3) don't 1) To listen to your parent's advice. 41 would grow 5 were 6) ian't Marine ecosystem. / Mangrove trees. 6) Order the words to make correct sentences. He looked for Subira. Waleed played football with his friend. 4) Coastal ecosystem. 2) Gravity stops people flying up into space. 5) No. he didn't. 3) What would you do if you had a lot of money? General Activities (P. 233) 7) Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: 1) Read and write True (T) or False (F). Salt was also a very important resource in ancient 1) T 2) F Egypt, and they sold it to other countries, too. People 5 F used sait to keep food fresh. It was also useful in 2) Choose the correct answer. medicine and agriculture. Some of the lakes in the Nile 1) Run away 12) A dugong 3) It was too salty Delta had lots of sait. 4) Her eggs were in the sand. 5) The sand was loo soft to walk on. The story 3) Read and write Yes or No. Activities (P. 224) 4) Yes 1) No -2) Yes 3) No. 5) No 6) No . . 8) Yes . 7) Yes 1) Road and write True (T) or False (F). 4) Road and circle. 2 T 4) F 1. T 1) Wadi el Gemal 2) plants 51 T - 6, F 3) hot 4) animals 2) Read and complete the sentences. 21 plants Wadi el Gema! 41 datfodil~ 5) the acacla tree

# AL-BAHER



الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



The Story

### Jubari searches for home

### The Characters



Help your child identify the characters of the story.

AL-BAHER - Connect Plus (5)

## The plot

حبكه المصه

Jubari was a brave young dorcas gazelle. He was born in Wadi el Gemal. He left home to look for the "Wadi of the Gazelles". He went to lots of places and met many different animals. Jubari returned home because it is the best place to live in.

كان جوباري غزالًا صغيرًا شجاعًا. ولد في "وادي الجمال". غادر الموطن ليبحث عن "وادي الغزلان".ذهب لأماكن عديدة وقابل حيوانات عديدة ولكنه عاد لموطنة لأنه أفضل مكان يمكنه العيش فيه.

ما الدرس المستفاد من القصة؟ ؟What is the moral of the story المستفاد من القصة؟

- Animals are happier in the ecosystem they are born in.

تعيش الحيوانات أسعد مُي البيئة التي ولدت بها.

### Picture Dictionary



An acacia tree is a species of tree which grows in hot dry places.



Daffodils are species of yellow flower which grow from bulbs.

The Story - Juliant searches for home



If you are brave, you are not afraid of dangerous or difficult situations.



A hoof is the hard foot of an animal. For example, horses, goats, and cows have hooves.

Help your child read the story plot and the picture مناعد طفيك أن يقرأ حبكة القصة والقاموس المصور.

### Jubari searches for home

### Nubian ibex

الماعز النويس



The Nubian ibex is a species of goat which lives in the mountains of northern Africa and the Middle East.

### salty

طعام مملح



Food with a lot of salt in it tastes salty.



Seagrass is a species of plant

which grows under the sea.

steep منحدر



A steep hill goes up or down very quickly, and so it is difficult to climb.



Jubari the dorcas gazelle was born in Wadi el Gemal in Egypt's Eastern desert.

For the first year of his life, Jubari followed his mother, Subira. She showed him which plants to eat and where to rest on hot days.

ولد غزال الصحراء "جوباري" في وادي الجمال في الصحراء الشرقية بمصر. وفي أول عام من حياته، رافق "جوباري" أمه "سوببرا" وأوضحت له أي النباتات يأكلها وأين يرتاح في الأيام الحارة.



Jubari was very brave. He wanted to go everywhere and play with all the animals. However, Subira taught him which animals were dangerous and how to stay away from predators. He learned to run away very quickly.

كان جوباري شجاعًا جدًا. وأراد أن يذهب إلى كل مكان ويلعب مع جميع الحيوانات. ومع ذلك، علمته سوبيرا أي الحيوانات خطيرة وكيف يبقى بعيدًا عن الحيوانات المفترسة. وتعلم أن يهرب بسرعة حدًا.

6 The Story - Jubari searches for home

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن بقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة



One day, Jubari and Subira were looking for food. Jubari asked his mother, "Mom, what is this place called?" Subira answered, "This is Wadi el Gemal, son. It means "Wadi of the Camels."

"Why do we live in the Wadi of the Camels?" Jubari said.

"We are gazelles."

Subira laughed. "It's only a name, son. Many animals live here. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles."

وفي نحد الأيام خان "حوبازي" و "سوبيرا" يبحثان عن الطعام. وسأل حوباري أمه قانلًا: " أمي، ماذا يسمي هذا المكان؟" مردب سونيرا قاتلة: "إنه وأدى الجمال يا بني. وهذب يعني "و دي به جمال".

قال جوباري: "ولم نعيش في وادي الجمال؟ نحن غزلان". ضحكت سوبيرا وقالت "إنه مجرد اسم يا بني. فالعديد من الحيوانات تعيش منا. وادي الجمال مكان مثالي للغزلان"،

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. سأعد طفلك أن يقرآ و يتابع أحداث العصة



"Why?" Jubari said. "Well," said his mother. "There are special plants here. First, there's our favorite food, the desert daffodil! And there is also the acacia tree. Their leaves give us food and water all year round, so we never need to drink. And the acacia trees need us, too."

"Why do they need us?" Jubari said.

"We eat their seeds and take them to new places. Then more acacia trees grow."

- رجوباري، لِمَ؟ قالت أمه "يوجد نباتات مميزة هنا. أولًا، يوجد طعامنا المفضل، إنها زهور النرجس الصحراوية! كما يوجد أشجار السنط. وأوراقها تمدنا بالطعام والماء على مدار العام لذلك لا نحتاج أبدًا لأن نشرب. وكذلك فإن أشجار السنط؟" قالت الأم: "نحن نأكل بذورها وننقل هذه البذور السنط تحتاجنا أيضًا." قال جوباري: "ولمَ تحتاجنا أشجار السنط؟" قالت الأم: "نحن نأكل بذورها وننقل هذه البذور أحدكن أخرى. وحدا تنمو المزيد من أشجار السنط."

8 The Story - Jubari searches for home

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. سائد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة



"I understand," said Jubari. "But is there a place called 'Wadi of the Gazelles'?"

"I don't know," said his mother.

"I am going to look for it," said Jubari.

"OK," said his mother." But remember all the things I have taught you and come back soon!"

من هجاء أن هد مهمت جاجي على بهجد مجان يسمي وادي العرلان؟ قالت أمه: "أنا لـ أعرف." قال **جوباري**.

تحد حدد در دي دي دل الشباء التي علمتك إباها وعد سريعًا".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طَفَاكَ انْ بَقَرَا و بِتَابِعِ أَحِدَاثُ الْقَصَةِ. M-BAHER - Connect Place (S)



( 1 Read and write True (T) or False (F).		
Jubari was born in Wadi el Gemal.		
Jubari didn't want to live in Wadi el Gemal.		
Subira taught Jubari which animals were dangerous.		
Wadi el Gemal.isn't the perfect place for gazelles.		
The acacia trees leaves give gazelles food and water.		
Acacia trees don't need gazelles.		
2 Read and complete the sentences.		
<ul> <li>Jubari was born in</li> <li>When Jubari was young, Subira taught him which to eat.</li> <li>Subira showed Jubari where to rest on</li> <li>Jubari and Subira's favorite food was</li> <li>They got enough water from</li> <li>Answer the following questions.</li> </ul>	days	
What did Jubari the gazelle learn from his mother?		
What does Wadi el Gemal mean in English?	. ,,,,	
What do Jubari and his mother eat in the Wadi?	Þ	
What do Jubari and his mother drink in the Wadi?		
O How do gazelles help the acacia trees?		
Why does Jubari leave the Wadi?	., 11	
The state of the s	1.5	

10 The Story - Jubari searches for home

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفقك أبر يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأستلة.



Jubari decided to go east. He was excited, so he ran very quickly. Soon, he saw some new kinds of trees. He walked into the trees and stopped. His hooves were under water!

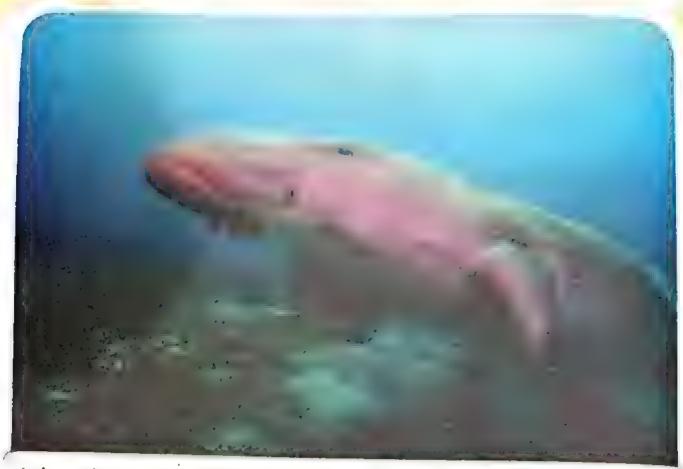
Jubari was thirty, so he tried to drink. "Yuck!" he said. The water was very, very salty.

Then he heard a voice.

"You can't drink that water! It's sea water."

قي حوباري ن بنحه شرقًا. كان منحمشا لدلك جرى بسرعة، وبعد قليل رأى بعض أنواع الأشجار الجديدة، ومشى حين الأشخار ثم يومفد كانت حوافره نحث لماء وكان عطشانًا، لذلك حاول أن يشرب وقال مشمئزًا " يوك!" لقد حان الماء مناجا جذا حدًا، ثم سمع صوت يفول" لا يمكنك أن تشرب من هذا الماء! إنه ماء بحر".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و بنابع أحداث القصة.



Jubari looked and saw a big white animal in the water. It was looking at him.

"I'm Donga. I'm a dugong. I live here in the mangrove forest by the Red Sea."

"I'm thirsty," said Jubari.

"Would you like some of my seagrass?" said Donga.
Jubari tried the seagrass, but it was very salty, too. "Thank you," he said." But the mangrove forest is too salty for me! Do you know where I can find the "Wadi of the Gazelles'?'"
"I'm sorry." said Donga. "I don't know."

ظر جوباري ووجد حيوانًا ضخمًا أبيضًا في الماء، وكان ينظر إليه، قال الحيوان" أنا دونجا أنا حبوان الأطوم وأنا أعيش منا في غابة المنجروف بالقرب من البحر الأحمر"، قال دونجًا " أتود بعضا من غشبي البحري؟" قام جوباري بأكل العشب البحري لكنه كان ماحًا جدًا أيضًا، وقال" أشكرك، لكن غابة المنحروف مالحة جدًا أيضًا، مل تعرف أين أبد وادي الغزلان؟" قال دونجا " أسف، أنا لا أعرف."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

12 The Story - Jubari searches for home





Next, Jubari ran north. He ran and ran, soon he came to a place where the ground was white, and very soft. He walked slowly. His hooves were going into the ground. Then he heard a voice. "Please don't walk here. My eggs are in the sand."

🧸 🎫 🤝 تحاه الشمال، وجرب، وجرب، وبعد قليل وصل إلى مكان أرضه بيضاء وناعم جدًا. ومشي ببطء، ــــر ـــ ص. ثم سمع عونًا يمول" من فضلك لا تمشي منا فإن بيضي في الرمال.'



Jubari looked. It was a brown turtle.

"I'm sorry," said Jubari. "What is this place?"

"It's my home," said the turtle. "Ras Hankorab beach."

"It's very nice," said Jubari. "But it's not a good place for gazelles. We can't run fast here because the sand is too soft."

. هم هم الله المكاري؟" منه عبد في المنظري أن الله المكاري؟" مال**ت السيمماة " هما شاطن رأس** ديجيان أن يمكينا أن تجري بصيحيا أنجية ليس مكتابا جيداً للعزبان أملا يمكينا أن <mark>نجري بسرعة منا لأن</mark>

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و ينابع أحد ث القصة.





Jubari decided to go south. He ran and ran. He came to some mountains. "I might see the 'Wadi of Gazelles' from the top." he thought.

Jubari climbed the biggest mountain. It was very steep. His

legs became very tired.

ف هوجاتيا با يشته مصوب وهاي وهري متي وهل إلى بعض الجبال واعتقد أنه ابنماً يني وادي العالي عن على الفعد الفعد ا الفعة المسق هوجاي أكب على وهاي شديد الانتداء، وأهاب سنقانه الإرماق الشديد.



Then he saw an animal, a Nubian ibex.

Jubari said, "Hello! Have you been to the top of this mountain?"
"Yes," said the ibex. "This is Gebel Elba. It's my home."

"It's too steep for my legs, "said Jubari. "Can you see the '\\aa' of the Gazelles' from the top?"

"I don't know that place." said the ibex. "But I can see a rembig lake to the west!"

د درده ب مدين النويد بيال دويا من " ديدنا على دنت على عمة هذا الديل" قال الماعر "نعم هذا ديل عيبه. معدد في النام أنه شديد الانتجاز بالنسبة لسافي، هن يمديك ان ترم وادب العظام من على القمه؟" قال مدر عدد عدد المدان، " لدن بمدنتي أن أرم بحيرة ضدمة بانجاه العرب "

14 The Story - Jubari searches for home

Help your child road and to low the events of control and to the events of



Jubari thought, "I've gone east. I've gone south and north, but haven't gone west."

He ran and ran. After a long time, he came to a very big lake.

"What is this place?" he said.

"This is Lake Nasser," said a voice. "It's a man-made lake. The people made it because they needed water. It's an important resource for them. But delicious gazelles don't need water to drink, do they?"

فكرَّ جوبارى قائلاً" اقد ذهبت تجاه الشرق، وتهدت بحاه أنجبوب والشمال لكن لم أذهب تجاه الغرب" ثم جرى وجراف وبعد مدة طورانه ومل التي تديرنا بعد معددًا وقال" ما هذا المكان ؟" ثم سمع صوتًا يقول " هذه بحيرة ناص. إنها تجتره مردمتع الإنسان لسيمته ما أداس الأنهم كانوا في حاجة إني الماء. وهذا مصدر هام لهم لكن الغرلان لذيذة الطعم لا يحتلجون العب ال الطعم لا يحتادون الم الماء ألسر كالليا"



Jubari couldn't see who was speaking. Then a dead tree in the water moved. It wasn't a tree! It was an animal!"
"What are you?" said Jubari.

"I'm a crocodile," said the animal. "This is my home, and I'm hungry."

Jubari's mother taught him not to stay near animals with big teeth, It was too dangerous! He ran and ran ...

لم يستطع جوباري أن يرم المتحدث. ثم تحركت شجرة ميتة فب المء. إنها لم تكن شجرة! إنها كانت حيوان، قال حدِباري "من أنت؟" قال الحيوان " أنا بمساح وهذا موطني، وأنا جوعان"كانت أم جوباري قد علمته ألا يقترب من الحيوانات ذات الأسنان الضخمة. وكان هذا خطيرًا جدًا ثم حرب وجرب.

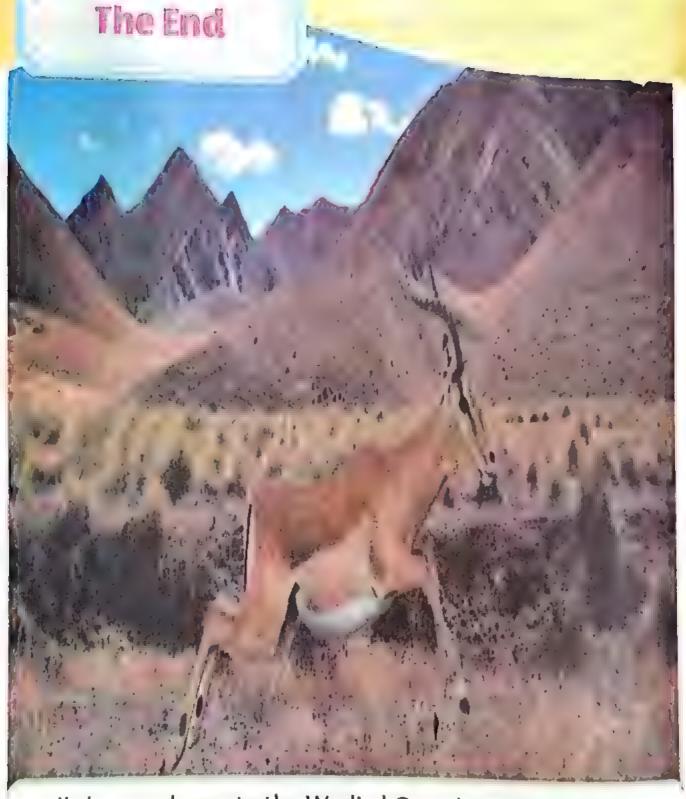
16 The Story - Jubari searches for home

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. سلمد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

# Activities

- Read and write True (T) or False (F).
- The first animal Jubari met was a dugong.
- The sea water was fresh.
- The mangrove forest is too salty for Jubari.
- Jubari can run fast in Ras Hankorab beach.
- The Gebel Elba is very steep for Jubari's legs.
- Lake Nasser is a natural lake.
- The crocodile looked like a dead tree in the water.
- ? Read and complete the sentences.
- for Jubari. The sea water was very .....
- The lives in the mangrove forest.
- The turtle lays her eggs in the ......
- Jubari's ..... were going into soft sand.
- lives in Gebel Elba.
- Gebel Elba is very \_\_\_\_\_ for gazelles.
- The crocodile is a ...... animal.
- The lives in Lake Nasser.
- (3 Answer the following questions.
- Where does the dugong live?
- What lives on the beach?
- Why did Jubari's legs become tired?
- Where does the Nubian ibex live?
- What does the crocodile look like?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأستلة



... all the way home to the Wadi el Gemal.

طوال الطريق لموطنه في وادي الجمال، 🔞 😘 🕟 🖖 🖖



He looked for Subira. "Mom! Mom!" he cried.

"Jubari, my brave and curious son. You are home," his mother said. Smiling, she asked, "Did you find the 'Wadi of the Gazelles'?"

"No, I didn't. But I found a lot of other places."

"Did you like them?" his mother asked.

"Not all of them. The mangroves were too salty. The beach was too sandy. The mountains were too steep. And there weren't many acacia trees.

وحاً بنحث عن سويبرا وهو يصرخ ويفول " أمي ، أمي " قالت أمه وهي تبتسم: "جوبارم وحي الشجاع والفضولم.. أنت الآن في موطئك.

وسأنته أعل وحدث وادى العزلان؟ قال جوباري: "لا، لم أجده. " لكني وجدت الكثير من الأماكن الأخرى" سألته أمه: "هي أحسن هذه الأماكن؟" قال جوباري: " لم أحب أبًا منها، فأشجار المنجروف كانت مالحة جدًّا. والشاطئ كان ملبنًا بأعمال وخالب الحبال شديده الالتحار. ولم يكن هناك الكثير من أشجار السنط ".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفیک آن یقرا و بتابع احداث القصة.



"Well, we have a lot of acacia trees here, and the desert is perfect for us to run and run!"

"Yes," said Jubari. "You were right. Wadi el Gemal is the perfect place for gazelles."

"I'm so happy that you agree," she smiled.

غَالَتَ الأَمَ: "حسنًا. لدينا الكثير من أشجار السنط هنا، والصحراء مكان ملائم (جيد) لنا لكي نجري ونجري!" قال فوناري: "لقد كنتٍ على حق، فَوادي الجمال مكان مثالي للغزلان" قالت الأم بابتسامة. "أنا سعيدة جدًّا أنك

توافقني الرأي".

20 The Story - Jubari searches for home

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

المحالة الله يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القعة.



1 Read and write True (T) or Falso (E)	1	Read	and	Write	True	(T)	Or F-	deo	(m)
--	---	------	-----	-------	------	-----	-------	-----	-----

- Jubari looked for Donga.
- Jubari was brave and curious.
- Jubari found Wadi el Gemal.
- The mangroves were too sweet.
- The beach was too sandy.
- There were a lot of acacia trees in the desert.
- 2 Read and complete the sentences.
- Jubari was ..... and curious.
- The mountains were too
- The desert was a ......place for gazelles.
- The ......was too sandy.
- There were many .....trees in the desert.
- (3 Answer the following questions.
- What is the moral of the story?
- Which ecosystem is very salty to Jubari?
- 3 What did Jubari look for at the end of the story?
- Which ecosystem is too sandy for Jubari?
- Did Jubari find Wadi of the Gazelles?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل مذه الأسئلة.



# Life in my world

Ecosystems				
grassland	المراعي / ارض عشبية	animo	als	حيوانات
rainforest	غابة مدليرة	speci	es	انواع / فعائل
freshwater	ماء عذب	soil		تربة زراعية
living things	كائنات حيق	thick		diam
non-living things	كاننات غبر حية		_	قلقه
Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون المطيرة	comm	nunity	مجتمع
Animals				4
dugong	حيوان الأطوم	worm	1	- Baga
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف			شبل
lizard	سطية	buzzi	ng bees	منين النحل
The heart				
arteries	المرايين أ	oxyge	en	أكسجين
veins	أوردة	beat	•	يدق/ينبض
carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	blood		בק
Others				
salt water	، مالح	ا ماء Wa	di İ	وادبي
mangrove tree	جرة المانجروف			آمراض آمراض
custard apple tree	جرة تفاح الكاسترد	dis ش	eases	أمراض
medicinal plant	ت طبي	int نبا	eract	يتفاعل
survive	ب <mark>و / يبقہ علي قيد الحيا</mark>	po یند	len	حبوب اللقاح
Adjective		Α	bstract N	Votin
beautiful	bea جميل	uty		الجمال
patient	pat oiet	ience		الصبر
lucky .	lucl محظوظ			الحظ
successful	Suc ناجح	cess		النجام
Final Revision - Unit (1)	Help your c	nild revise	unit (1)	

هاعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الأولى

### Relative Clauses

الذي / التي (للعامل) ماس

Farrand

e.g. We met a man who works in a garden.

which (Jolen Jeel) and / will

e.g. A wadi is an ecosystem which is normally dry.

where (للمكان) حيث (forplaces

e.g. We learned a lot about the area where they live.

### Linking Words

#### and.

We went to the beach and we swam in the sea.

#### but

Nany likes basketball, but he doesn't like football.

#### because

Nadine goes to the pool because she loves to swim.

SŌ

Lara wants to keep her heart healthy, so she does exercise.

Help your child revise unit (1).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الأولى



ACTIVITIES
رض الاستماع في احر الختان Listen and circle the correct answer.
Our veins and arteries carry (water - food - carbon dioxide - blood) around bodies.
(Arteries - Veins - Heart - Stomach) move blood away from our heart.
Oxygen - Stomach - Arteries Veins) carry blood to the heart.
We don't use (oxygen - water - blood - carbon dioxide) like plants do.
رع الاستماع في آخر الكتاب. Listen and complete.
Seleem is a boy. He loves sports.
He plays, football, and basketball.
He eats healthy food like, vegetables and rice.
He doesn't eat a lot ofbecause he knows that
this food isn't very healthy.
Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.
fish-living-area -desert
Toka : What is an ecosystem, Roqia?
Roqia: It is all the animals and plants in an 1)
Toka: Which ecosystems do we have in Egypt?
Roqia: We have a 2)ecosystem and a marine ecosystem.

What are some of the 3).....

Rogia: They are 4) ............

marine ecosystem?

24 Final Revision - Unit (i)

Toka:

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلاء أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه السلبة.

..... things in a

... and whales.

### 4 Read and complete the following dialog.

Hi, Ahmed. 1) . . . are you going? Δli

I am going to the sports club? I like sports. Ahmed :

: What sports do you like? Ali

Do you like 3)..... food? Ali

Ahmed: Yes, I eat healthy food like 4)... and

vegetables.

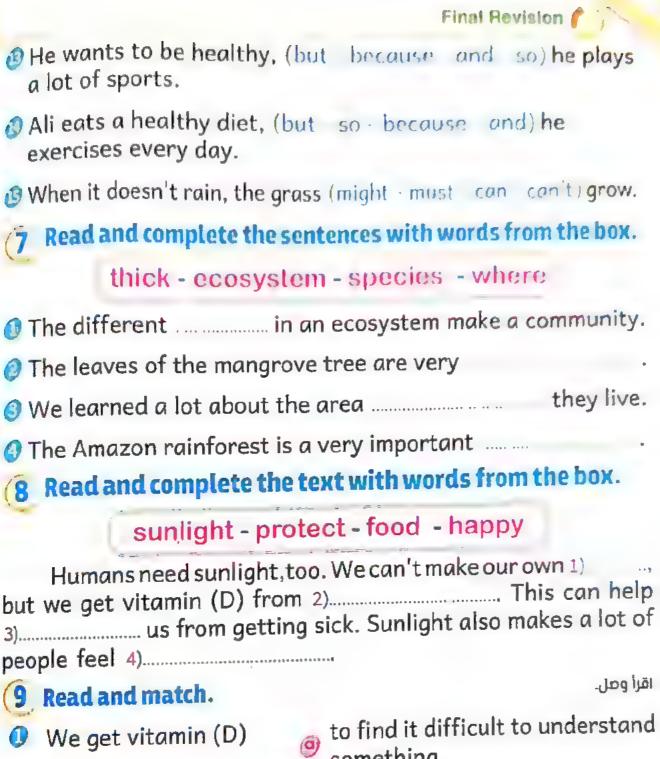
#### 5 Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

- The (stems roots leaves flowers) of a mangrove tree are thick.
- Fish and animals are (living dead non-living abstract) things.
- Stones and rocks are (living non-living survive thick).
- Many (camels bears dogs butterflies), bees and other insects live in mangrove forests.
- Mangrove forests (protect kill damage destroy) the marine ecosystem.
- 1 The plants, animals, and insects (kill protect fight interact) with each other to survive.
- Sara doesn't wait because she isn't a (patience patient success - luck) person.
- (1) There is so much (beauty beautiful success successful) in the Amazon rainforest.
- Hany's exhibition was a great (success successful patient - beautiful).

- (Lucky Luck Patient Successful) is also important.
- (Veins Arteries Blood Muscles) move blood away from our heart.
- We can get vitamin D from (sunlight moon light water blood).

## 6 Choose the correct word. (Grammar)

- This is a lizard (which where who when) lives in the Egyptian desert.
- This is a medicinal plant (who where when which) helps people with coughs.
- This is wadi (where when which who) different animals live.
- This is a person (which who where when) lives in Cairo.
- This is Ali (who which where when) lives in Giza.
- This is a place (where who when what) it sometimes snows.
- The Sinai Peninsula is a place (who when what where) red foxes live.
- S Is Mona the girl (when which where who) always draws pictures of animals?
- I don't play basketball, (so and but because) I play football.
- I'm going to the sports center (because but so and) it's basketball club today.
- It's Friday (so but and because) my brother doesn't go to school.
- D I love football (but because and so) I love tennis, too.



9 Read and match.

something.

To be confused is

**b** quite important.

I have a friend who

from sunlight.

Luck is also

lives in Alexandria.

1-( )

2-(

3-(

4-(

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

( ) thin (1)
(10 Correct the underlined word. (Grammar)
1 this is Ali which lives in Luxor.
1his is the house who I live.
There is so much beautiful in the Amazon rainforest.
☑ I don't play tennis, and I play football. (
🐸 He loves playing basketball 👓 he loves playing tennis, to
(11 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets.
🝘 Hazem is Adam's cousin. He lives in the Sinai Peninsula.
(who)
They visited a wadi. They saw some animals there.
(where)
He plays football. He doesn't play basketball.(but)
We eat a lot of fruit. It is healthy. (because)
I want to be healthy. I don't eat candy and cakes.
(so)
(12 Order the words to make correct sentences.
and the correct sentences.
does your How beat often heart?
@ says that the people Us
esays that the people the dugong back are.
g you aunt my po know lives who Alex in ?
lives - who - Alex - in - 7
11 tage 11 tage
mangrove forests in -?
128. Final Revision - Unit (1) Help your child deal with such questions

# (13 Read the passage then answer the questions.

Nabq is a very big National Park in South Sinai. Along the coast here, there are 4.8 kilometers of mangrove forest, which is the largest in the Red Sea. We went there to learn why mangrove forests are so important for the marine ecosystem. When we arrived at the beach, we saw trees growing out of the sea! Most trees can't grow in salt water, but mangrove trees can. They have amazing roots which grow high out of the water. These roots help them get oxygen. When I touched the trees leaves, they felt very thick. These special leaves stop the plants losing water when it's very hot. We learned that mangrove trees help the environment in many ways. Mangrove trees protect the non-living things and the living things in the marine ecosystem. When there are storms, their deep roots stop the sand washing away. The forests are also a safe home for many animals.

- A) Choose the correct answer.
- The mangrove tree is in the (Red Sea Black Sea Mediterranean Sea - China Sea).
- The mangrove trees grow on (cold hot salty sweet) water.
- B) Answer the following questions.
- What is Nabq?
- What is special about the roots and leaves of the mangrove trees?

# (14 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about.

How to keep healthy

Guiding words:

(healthy - fruit - vegetables - exercise - unhealthy - chocolate - relax)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

### Unit (2)

# Look around you

#### Vocabular

vocabulary	<i>t</i>		
valley	nalg	crater	فوهة بركان
canyon	وادِ ضَيق - منحدر	dunes	(قيلم)) نابلغ
wetlands	أراضي رطبة - مستنقعات	erode	تتفي - تعني
erupt	يثور	storm-chaser	بفواهماا دبتتم
hurricane	إعصار	thunderstorm	قيعدا قفهاد
flood	فيضان	dust storm	قيبابة قفماد
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافي	mountain	جبل
coast	ساحل	grassland	ارض عشية
excited	مسرور - متحمس	man-made	من منع الإنسان
archaeologist	عالم آثار		
century	مّرن (ا عام)	columns	أطلال : -
lava	حمم بركانية		وعمدا
mud flow	تدفق الطين	ash	قربة زراعية
arch		pilot	رماد
light - lit	يشعل - أشعل	•	طيار
pilot		hot air balloon	معلة - بيما
ribbon	اشريط	diary	عنطاد هوائب
Natural Wone		aidiy	يوميات / مفكرة

#### Natural Wonders

The Sahara Des	الصحراء الكبره  ert
Victoria Falls	شلالات مٰیکتوریا

Mount Kilimanjaro Ngorongoro Crater المجاون نجورونجورو

جبل كليمنجارو

Help your child

30)

## Present Perfect Tense (au Illiania la Present Perfect Tense)

Form

eg I've played tennis.

**Negative** 

e.g. We haven't studied French. e.g. He hasn't slept early.

#### Question /

Yes, No question

e.g. Have you bought a TV?

Wh-question

eg. Where have you been?

e.g. What has he eaten?

#### Key words

just I've just met my teacher.

Have you ever seen a lion? ever

No, I've never seen a lion. never

She's already fed the hens. already She's fed the hens already.

Help your child revise unit (2).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الودده الثانية.



السلسة على العالم (Listen and circle the correct answer) continent	TII (D
Value (NE)	
	100
The Nearen and I do to the order of the order	-u). •
The (crater - character - cubs - cups) for mea	rij0
erupted millions of years ago.  The crater is about (260 - 240 - 620 - 640) square	
Kudherers	
رستماع في آخر الكتاب. Listen and complete.	_
Rainbow Bridge is one of the largest natural	*****
in the world.	
<pre> It is also 200 million years  It is 88 meters </pre>	•
It is in a very hot	
Read and complete the dialog with words from the bo	X.
big - buffaloes - reading - Tanzania	
Sama : What are you doing now?	
Toka : I'm 1) a book about	
natural wonders. The Ngorongoro crater is one them.	ot
Sama : In which country is it?	
Toka : It's in 2)	
Sama : How 3) is it?	
Toka: It's about 260 square kilometers.	
Sama : Are there any animals?	
Toka : Yes, there are many big animals like elephants,	
4), and leopards.	
Help your child deal with such questions. المعد طفلاء أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأستلة.	já:

4 Read and complete the following dialog.

Ahmed: I'm very bored. Let's go out.

John 1) can we go?

Ahmed: What about 2)

The pyramids! They are fantastic! John

Where are the pyramids?

Ahmed: They are in 3)

John : How can we go there?

Ahmed: We can go 4) ..... bus.

5 Choose the correct word. (Vocabulary)

- The Ngorongoro Crater is the largest (canyon valley) volcanic - dune) crater in the world.
- Inside the Ngorongoro crater there are forests and (deserts - wetlands - valleys - dunes).
- The Sahara Desert covers (eight nine eleven six) countries.
- The Sahara Desert is very (cold warm snowy hot).
- Water has changed the (place shape color crater) of Victoria Walls.
- 6 The (dune valley canyon wetland) is a hill made of sand shaped by the wind.
- To (erode erupt snow rain) is to change or destroy by rain, wind or the sea, etc.
- 18 The (dune valley wetland canyon) is an area of land that is often covered by water.
- 19 When volcanoes (erode erupt erose make), fire and rocks come out of the top.
- (Stem Leaf Soil Ash) is the top part of the Earth in which plants grow.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفات أن يتعامل مع مثل مده الأسلة

#### (1) Unit (2)

- (Soil Ash Mud flow Lava) is hot liquid rock that comes out of volcanoes.
- ② A (mud flow soil ash lava) is soft wet material that moves down mountains.
- A (flame ribbon basket light) is a long soft piece of material.
- Deople use a (flame basket ribbon light) to carry things.
- To (light sleep erode erupt) is to make something start to burn.

#### 6 Choose the correct word. (Grammar)

- Waleed has (travel traveled travels traveling) by bus.
- Aya has never (met meet meet meeting) a famous person.
- 3 Amir and Fares (hasn't played has played haven't played - playing) tennis before.
- 4 (Has Is Have Are) Fares ever traveled by train?
- Shave Youssef and Wael (see saw seen sees) an elephant?
- 6 Has Mom (ever never just already) made fesikh for Sham El-Nessim?
- Have they ever (visit visited visiting visited) another country?
- B Have you (eats ate eaten eats) saydeya?
- Has Kamal (be been being have been) to the desert?
- Was Kamal frightened when he (see saw seen sees)
  his first hurricane?
- He (won have won winning win) the first prize for photographers aged 10.
- Have you ever seen a volcano? Yes, (I have I haven't
- (34) Final Revision Unit (2)

Help your child deal with such questions.

B Kamal has (took - taken - takes - taking) a photo of many extreme weather events. @ Kamal has (been never - never been - ever been - be) in a dangerous situation. B She has (learn - learns - learned - learning) a lot about taking photos. 7 Read and complete the sentences with words from the box. yet - largest - Soil - Sahara Desert 1 There are very big sand dunes in the ...... @ We haven't visited Aswan ..... 3 The Fish River Canyon is the ...... canyon in Africa. is the top part of the Earth in which plants grow. (8 Read and complete the text with words from the box. eroded - noise - River - canyon The Victoria Falls are an enormous waterfall on the Zambezi 1)..... Every minute, 5 million cubic meters of water falls into a big 2)..... which the water has 3)...... The water makes a lot of 4)..... as it falls. اقرأ وصل. 9 Read and match. They visited a restaurant and @ eaten fish soup. Rainbow Bridge is one of the 🔞 they ate chicken and rice. largest natural arches in the world. 3 Lava is a hot liquid rock. Mona has never 3-() 4-() 1-()

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طملك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسلاة.

- B) Answer the following questions.
- How old are the Pinnacles?
- 4 How high are the tallest columns?

Final Revision - Unit (2)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسللة

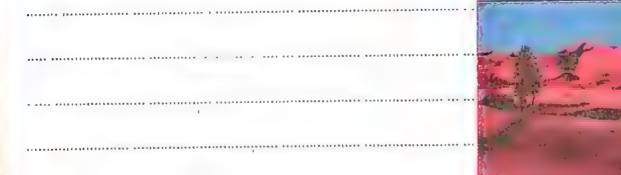


- (12 Order the words to make correct sentences.
- you Have traveled a ship on ?
- 🎯 this story I have told you already .
- is special What about the Java of Island ?
- 13 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about.

#### The Sahara Desert

Guiding words:

(natural - wonders - largest - eleven countries - sand dunes)



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل مذه الأسلبة.



# How we use our world.

#### Natural resources

coal	asa date	economy	History
fertile	uma' flax	ousnow linen	ulish abtaa
mud	ub pale	inc when mine	atta
raw materials		فواد خام	

#### States dander

liquid	solid سائل	ųda	gas	şle.
boil	freeze يغلب	يتجمد	melt	Ugu
fixed shape	شكل ثابت			

#### Physical properties مىالىيە بىلىلىدى

bend	ँगविष्य	hard	چامد - ملب	mass	الكيلة
odor	رائحة	rough	خشن	soft	ناعم
sticky	لزچ - لمق	texture	نسيج / ملمس		

#### Stories قصص

dig	يحفر	flamingo	طائر الفلامنجو	hole	حمرة
sink	يغطس	shovel	جاروف	tunnel	نفق
skeleton	میکل عظمی	expert	لتبيغ		

38) Final Revision - Unit (3)

Help your child revise unit (3).

atitit assylle she ulcitate silv

#### First Conditional

Form:

If + present simple, will + inf.

Usage: We use the first conditional:

To describe events which will probably happen in the future.

(e.g. If we go to the museum, we will see dinosaur bones.

#### Second Conditional

Form:

If + past simple, would + inf.

⇒ To describe events we imagine, but probably won't happen.

(e.g. If it snowed in October, I would be very surprised.

### Reported speech

#### Direct speech

كلام مناشر

The words that a person says.

e.g. Seleem said, "I like reading comics."

#### Reported speech,

كلام غير مباشر (كلام منقول)

To report what a person said.

e.g. Seleem said he liked reading comics.

#### Notice the changes

للحظ التغسرات

e.g. Fareeda said, "I can play tennis." Fareeda said she could play tennis.

Change the subject according to the speaker.

Change the verb from present to past.

We don't use speech marks.

Help your child revise unit (3).

ساعد طفنك أن يراجع الوحدة الثائثة.

1 List	en	نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب.
People	e	kept (birds - bees cars - chickens) to make honey
in an	cie	ent Egypt.
People used honey to make food taste (sour - sweet - sugar - bad).		
They used honey as a (medicine - plant - clay - mud).		
They put bees in a house called (knives - hives - lives - wives)		
2 Liste	en	and complete. أخر الكتاب.
Peo	pl	e in ancient Egypt used to build houses and
was soft	ulc	dings. They took it from the when i
hard and	d .	nd made it into square
3 Read	d :	and complete the diplog with words from the how
3		and complete the dialog with words from the box.
		important-linen-clothes-flax
Noha	:	What did people use to make 1)?
Nada	:	They used 2)
Noha	:	Why did people use it?
Nada	:	They used it to make 3)
Noha	:	Was it 4)?
Nada	•	Yes, it was.
* Read	d a	and complete the dialog.
Salma	:	Where did you 1)?
Esraa	•	I 2)to the
Salma	:	did you go there?
Esraa	:	By bus.
Salma	:	What did you see?
Esraa	:	I 4)some mummies of animals.
(40) Final Revision - Unit (3) Help your child deal with such questions		

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثن هذه الأستلة.

### (4 Choose the correct word (Vocabulary).

- The sun and water are (non-renewable renewable old next, sources.
- @ If you (cool freeze boil drink) water, it turns to steam.
- (in the state of t
- To dig a hole in the mountains, take a (Towel padel shadow shovel).
- 6 They made linen for clothes from (gold wood flaz metal).
- 6 (Gold Copper Iron Supper) is easy to bend.
- @ Egyptians used (salt water honey milk) as a medicine.
- 3 The ancient Egyptians made paper from (papyrus dates flax gold).
- People in ancient Egypt used (gold coal mud salt) to
   build houses.
- O A (deaf blind dumb funny) person can't see.
- 1 The old cheese has a bad (mass odor rough texture).
- The glue is thick and (rough hard sticky soft).
- Fice is a (gas liquid solid steam).
- ☑ Today, we're going to (make do play eat) a science experiment.
- (B) My favourite (animal bird insect worm) was the flamingo.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسلام.

#### Unit (3)

# ( Choose the correct word (Grammar).

- 1 If I visited the museum, I (will-would can may) be happy.
- If I (meet met meets meeting) a famous person, I wouldn't know what to say.
- If I have enough money, I (will would could might) buy a car.
- If I (visit visits visited visiting) Cairo, I would go to the Egyptian Geological Museum.
- S If I (fly flies flew flying)in a hot air balloon, I wouldn't be frightened.
- 6 If it (is was are am) hot outside, I wouldn't go out.
- If we go to the museum, we (would could will might) see dinosaur bones.
- (3) If you put a stone on water, it will (sink float fly think).
- Omar said he (like likes liked liking) reading comics.
- Soha said she usually (have has had having) fruit for breakfast.
- Amira said she (could can may will) play the guitar.
- Adel said he (will would may can) walk to school.
- Waleed said he (is are am was) going to play tennis.
- Mona said she (go.- went goes going) to the park.
- # Ali said, "I (can could might would)" swim.
- 5 Safia said, "I (plays has played play playing) football.

(42), Final Revision - Unit (3)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسلاق.

# Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box.

wa	terfal	s.	boil	- ek	novel	_ 1	inon
		7 74			II IVE	700	

Our class went on a trip to the at Wadi El Rayan.  I used a to dig a hole in the mountain.
it.
Read and complete the sentences with the words from
CHE DOM.
flamingo-honey-fertile-odor
1) This soil is We can grow many crops.
<ul><li>The old cheese has a bad</li><li>My favorite bird is the</li></ul>
People in ancient Egypt used as a medicine.
6 Read and match.
1 People put bees a solid, liquid and gas.
The water states are are the waterfalls?
3 Damietta is a city on the 6 in hives.
4 How high Mediterranean coast of Egypt.
1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )
7 Correct the underlined words.
Omar said I like English. ()
2 Mona said I can swim. ()
3 Ali said, I will visit the zoo.
4 Mazen said, I play tennis.
Help your child deal with such questions.  AL-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) 43

They said they go to school.	
Jf you play well, you would win.	
Jif he plant trees, he would help the environment. (	
Jif she ran, she will catch the bus.	
If he visited the museum, he will be happy. (	
If she stady hard, she would succeed.	
8. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in br	ackets.
He runs, so that he can catch the bus.	( <b>If</b> )
She doesn't have money, so she can't buy a car.	(If)
He said, "I like English".	(liked)
She said," I play tennis".	(played)
I ride a bike. I help the environment.	(If)

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfalls at Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful! There are two lakes there: One at the top of the waterfalls and one at the bottom. The waterfalls are 67 meters high, so the sound of water falling is very loud. We couldn't hear our teacher talking very well! We learned that the water comes from an oasis in the desert with water. The water travels eight kilometers from the oasis to the lake through a tunnel.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

Our class went on a trip to the waterfalls of Wadi El (Hilton - Rayan - Melook - Adnan).

(44) Final Revision - Unit (3)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثن مذه الأسلام.

- The waterfalls are (55 65 67 47) meters high.
  B) Answer the following questions.
  Where did water come from?
- How many lakes are there in wadi El Rayan?
- (10 Order the words to make correct sentences.
- @ Wael's is Which favorite bird ?
- @ as honey People a medicine used .
- @ make -used People linen clothes to...
- old -has The cheese abad odor .
- going -to We're ascience -do experiment
- (11 Write a paragraph of Mary (50) words about.

Guiding questions: Mud

- Who used it?
- What did they use it for?
- Where did they take it?
- What did they make from it?
- Was it important?

Help your child deal with such questions.

## Unit (4)

## We're on the move

### Vocabulary

-			
pedal	بعال	skateboard	بويد درائع
brakes	 مرامل	physics	+12,00
wheel	إطار/ عداة	builder	1 1 1 1 2 1 p
speed	ուլա	inventor	84.0
push force	موهالدفع	feathers	jug.
pull force	قوة الجذب	land	hier
friction	أجتكاك	hurt	2 171
space	فضاء	invent	يذثرع
tension	فغط	fallover	بقع - يسقط
air resistance	مقاومة العواء	tires	اميء الم
gravity	جاذبية	rope	حىل
dart	سهم	hook	الماها
paper airplane	طائرة ورقية	fold	of when
vertically	عموديا	turn over	سق
crease	يضغط/يجعد	ground	لرعي
glider	طائرة شراعية	desert	صدراء
tip	طرف	float	رطفو
astronaut	رائد فضاء	interested in	
normal	طبيعي	planet	معتم د
special	خاص / مميز	Mars	کوک
tour	جولة	company	العريخ
stadium	استاد	project	شركة
engineer	مهندس	solve	مشروع
pilot	طيار	apartment	يحل
trampoline	نطاطة	architecture	شقة
parachute	باراشوت	architect	مندسة معمارية
46) Final Revision - Unit	(4) He	p your child revise unit (4)	معندس معماري

## Question tag .....

🦸 It has two parts,

regarden unfer

a sentence, Question tag?

#### Esage

We use it to check or confirm information.

يستجدم السوال المديل للتحقق من المعلومات أو تأكيدها.

the case have

#### Form

The question tag is formed of:

helping verb + subject pronoun?

#### Notes

- positive sentence, negative tag?
  - eg You live in Egypt, don't you?
- negative sentence, positive tag?
  - e.g. Ali didn't go home, did he?
- We use a comma before the question tag.
  - e.g. He has played football, hasn't he?

Help your child revise unit (4).

and it small , the election who



( Listen and circle the corre	يص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب.         ct answer،
Amal is interested in the state	
It is discloss important be	nd ugly) to study other planets.  It help us solve some of Earth's problems).
(1 Listen and complete.	نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب. نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب.
Karim decide to be a	•
He went to an	festival with his mom and dad
We saw different planes flyi	ng in the
The planes were flying arou	
	alog with words from the box.
	gravity - fall
	do?
Seif : It makes things 2).	<u> </u>
Anas : What will happen if the	9
Adda at alara a area da cal-	to the planets?
	•
Seif : It keeps the planets n	noving around the 4)
Heba : What's your favorite	
Eman My favorite subject	
Heba : Why do you like scie	The state of the s
Eman : Because I want to be	
Heba : Do you 3)	
Eman : Yes, I 4)	building houses?
	Your child deal was
Final Revision - Unit (4)	your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسللة.

### (4 Choose the correct word (Vocabulary).

- Judy wants to fly planes. She'd like to be a/an (astronaut engineer pilot architect).
- Adam likes studying the planets. He wants to be a/an (astronaut teacher farmer doctor).
- Ali would like to help to build new bridges. He'd like to be a/ an (nurse - gardener - engineer - astronaut).
- You can use (brakes pedals seats wheels) when you want a bike to stop or slow down.
- You use a (push pull air resistance) force to jump on a trampoline.
- 6 Abbas Ibn Firnas was a/an (engineer architect inventor pilot).
- When you open the fridge door, you are using a (push gravity - pull - resistance) force.
- B He made two (wings feathers beaks legs) to help him fly like a bird.
- 9 End your email with (See you soon Hi Hello Welcome).
- Begin your email with (By for now See you soon Hi Welcome).
- She is interested (at on in of) building with renewable resources.
- A person who works in space is called a/an (architect astronaut teacher doctor).
- (Friction Gravity Tension Spring force) between the bike tyres and the road stops you from falling.
- To increase the speed of the bike, You must (push pull run jump) the pedals more quickly.
- Grandpa showed the children a (pear pair bear gear) of shoes.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفسهٔ أن يتعامل مع مثل مذه الأسئلة.



### Choose the correct word (Grammar).

- The children visited the science museum today, (did didn't do don't) they?
- People (can will are can't) see some interesting things there, can't they?
- Their teacher won't give them a lot of homework, (can't didn't will do) he?
- The science museum (is isn't can can't) far from the city center, is it?
- Khalid's sister is 12 years old, (won't don't can't isn't)she?
- Mr Hassan doesn't drive, (is can does will) he?
  - I'll be in your class next year, (am do can't won't) I?
  - @ Rania (can can't will won't) play the guitar, can't she?
  - We won't be late, (do are can will) we?
  - Eman didn't go to the park, (is can will did) she?
  - There isn't any coffee in the cupboard, (did does is can) there?
- She (isn't didn't doesn't won't) tell me her name, did she?
- You will send Grandpa an email, (don't won't can't mustn't) you?
- We can make dinner tonight, (won't don't can't didn't) we?
- ## Hamdi and his family (travel travels traveled traveling)
  by boat, didn't they?
- (50) Final Revision Unit (4)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسللة.

Final	Revision	1
	1101011	

# Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box.

	builder	-invent	or-foa	thore -	land
6	_	HIVEHI	or Tea	U1612-	lanu

1 Abbas Ibn firnas was an	in the 19 <sup>th</sup> century.
He wanted to fly and	safely on the ground.
3 He wasn't a	
4 He made	
Read and complete the text	
clocks-telling-im	portant-scientist
People around the world in	vented water clocks. They were
the best for 1) the time of	orrectly. In 1656 a2)
invented the first modern clock became the best way to tell th	
very 4) for many 6 Read and match.	years.
1 Have you ridden	you use a pull force.
When you fly a kite	b can you?
Gravity is a force that pulls	ø a bike before?
4 You can't ride a bike,	<b>a</b> objects towards the Earth.
1-( ) 2-( )	3-( ) 4-( )
7 Correct the underlined wor	ds.
1 It can't be hot tomorrow, wi	Il it? ()
2 Ibrahim didn't forget his bag	, <u>will he?</u> ()

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلت أن يتعامل مع مثل مذه الأسللة.

1	I Invite	1.45
4	Unit	(4)

Omar plays the piano, does he?	(	)
Gameela won't be late, conshe?	(	)
6 Hala goes to the sports center, didn't she?	(	)
They can speak English, don't they?	(	)
	(	)
@Waleed played football yesterday, won't he?	(	)
A camel canfly, canit?	(	. )
© It won't rain tomorrow, does it?	(	)

Sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things. When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online. He did his school work in the day and in the evening he worked on his own company.

He said that the science and math lessons at school helped him to learn how to solve problems. He also found English very useful as it helps him work with people across the world. He is now learning

Japanese so he can talk to people in Japan.

"For me, a job is about doing things which help other people around the world," he says.

A) Choose the correct answer.

Sherif started helping a (toy - robot - doll - electric) design company online.

@He is learning (English - French - Japanese - Arabic) so he can talk to people in Japan.

B) Answer the following questions.

When did he do his school work?

What did he want to be when he was 10 years old?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساءد طملك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الاستلة

@ Rewrite the Sale	rinal Revision
@ Rewrite the following using the wo He'll call you tomorrow, won't he?	ord(s) in brackets.
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	(Hewon't)
They like museums, don't they?	(She likes)
The state of the s	The bird can't swim,)
She went to the science museum, didn	't she? (She goes)
S Your mom doesn't speak French, does	she? (speaks)
0 Order the words to make correct ser	ntences
o some- to - talk - I - my friends- had	l- time- to
2 agreat - was - Abbas Ibn Firnas - in	ventor
3 air - The - into - children- up- the-	flew
gravity - there - space - Is - in - ?	
6 work-to- <u>I'd</u> -in-medicine-like-	*
Write an email of FIFTY (50) words.	iture job. Your name is
To your friend Safia about your fu	itale job. Tour manie 15
Cotab	
teacher - interesting - children	- hard - school
**************************************	
***************************************	**************************************
Help your child deal with such questions.	AL-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) (53

#### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer. نص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب In some ways, humans are similar to (plants - water - sun sky) Our (veins - arteries - bones - muscle) move blood away. Our (bones - stomach - veins - arteries) carry blood to heart. We don't use (oxygen - water - carbon dioxide - food) like plants do. زق الدستماع في آخر الكيان 2 Listen and complete. When Mazen is riding his bike, he uses a ...... force to move the pedals. When he wants to \_\_\_\_\_the bike, he uses the brakes. If he wants to increase his \_\_\_\_\_\_,he must push more quickly. 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog. Grandpa: What are you doing tomorrow, children? Donia : We are going into the 1) with Dad. There were dinosaur bones in the mountains. : What would we do if we 2).... Tarek dinosaur bones? Donia : I would take them 3)..... Here's the shovel. Let's start digging. : Look! I've found a bone. Is it a 4) bone? Tarek : I don't think so. They're heavy enough to be Donia dinosaur bones.

There were many natural resources in ancient Egypt. Egyptians used honey to make medicine. It was very important for helping with problems with the skin or eyes. There are hieroglyphics in ancient temples which show people keeping bees. People used papyrus. It is a strong plant to make things such as baskets and sandals, but the most important thing people made from it was paper. The ancient Egyptians made some of the first books in the world using it.

- A) Choose the correct answer.
- Egyptians used (linen papyrus honey flax) for helping with problems with the skin.
- The ancient Egyptians made some of the first (books honey flax gold) in the world using papyrus.
- B) Answer the following questions.
- Who used honey to treat health problems?
- What was papyrus used for?

## 5 Choose the correct word.

- Mangrove forest (protects kills damages destroys) the marine ecosystem.
- 2 The (engineer vet storm-chaser doctor) followed the thunderstorm in his car.
- 3 When you (freeze boil cool melt) water, it turns to steam.
- The children visited the science museum, (aren't didn't did are) they?

Exams
6 Order the words to make correct sentences.
orater - The Ngorongoro - is - square - kilometers - 260
Vives - What - in - forests - mangrove - ?
7 The Reader.
A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).
Jubari's hooves were too small. ( )
② Turtles lay their eggs on water. ( )
B) Answer the following questions.
3 Which ecosystem do the turtles live in?
What did Jubari the gazelle learn from his mother?
8 Look and write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about.
( An ecosystem )
Guiding words:
(animals - plants - area - big - small - interact - species)



Final Revision - Exams 56

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأستلة



**(2**)

(1 Lister	n ai	nd circle the correct answer. نص الاسلمام في آذر الكتان	
Mount volcan	kil oes	imangaro is made of (two_thirty - three - four)	
- Austi	rali		
a It's (ed	isy	- nice - difficult - good) to climb kilimangaro.	
4 There	is s	snow and (water - gas - ice - fall) at the top.	
(2 Lister	n ai	nd complete. في آخر الكتاب.	
Damiet	tta	is a on the Mediterranean coast	
of Egyp	ot.		
It has a	a loi	ng, beautiful	
3 There	are	also many beautiful gardens and to see.	
1 Damie	tta	is also a busy and an important	
Calabase		ntro	
(2 Sunn	lv 1	the missing parts in the following dialog.	
Sondos	:	How many countries have you visited, Dad:	
Father	:	1)	
Sondos	:	2)	
Father	:	Yes, I have been to Italy.	
Sondos	:	Have you ever been to Japan?	
Father	:	No, 3)?	
Sondos	:	4)	
Father	:	I liked France most.	
Help you	 r chil	d deal with such questions.  AL-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) (57)	

Last year I visited the Winter Palace in St. Petersburg in Russia. It was such a fantastic trip. In this Palace there are marble and gold everywhere with huge chandeliers hanging from the ceiling. The light made everything shiny. The Winter Place is full of treasures from the past. I really enjoyed the amazing views over the river Neva. I had to walk a lot so I wore comfortable shoes. Going to the Palace in the morning is much better than going in the afternoon, because there were long queues in the afternoon. I hope I can go there one more time.

- A) Choose the correct answer.
- The Winter Palace is on the river (Nile Thames Neva Sein).
- The underlined word <u>It</u> refers to the (Winter Palace trip
   Palace castle).
- B) Answer the following questions.
- Where is the Winter Palace?
- Why did the visitor wear comfortable shoes?

#### (5 Choose the correct word.

- ## Have you (ever never yet just) seen a lion?
- (Air Spring Gravity Friction) is a force that pulls objects towards the Earth.
- Steam is a (liquid gas sold hard).
- This is a place (where who when which) it sometimes snows.
- 58 Final Revision Exams

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل عذه الأسلة.

rital nevision
6 Order the words to make correct sentences.
can - What - we do- with - natural - resources -?
odon't - They - look - normal shoes like .
(7) The Reader.
A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).
<ul> <li>Gazelles and acacia trees are part of the ecosystem in Wadi el Gemal.</li> </ul>
Oprcas gazelles find it easy to climb steep mountains.
B) Answer the following questions.
3 Why does Jubari leave the Wadi?
4 What do Jubari and his mother eat in the Wadi?
8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about.
(Natural Wonders)
Guiding words:
(The Sahara Desert - largest - eleven - countries - Mount
Kilimanjaro - three - volcanoes - tallest)
(ANTICHMENTALIS) TO CONTROL OF THE C
formation and the state of the
Designation of the contract of
Thromas a superior control of the superior of
Help your child deal with such questions.  Al-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) 59

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

- The kingfisher visited her (friend mother father teacher) the lizard in a mangrove.
- The lizard was (excited happy delighted sad).
- When the people came to the mangrove forest, they cut down (grass flowers trees leaves),
- After cutting trees, it is difficult for lizards to find (food water - fish - birds) to eat.

## 2 Listen and complete.

- A long time ago, he ......many things including water clocks.
- Abbas Ibn Firnas is a very .....person.

## 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue.

Mazen : Hi Nabil! Have you seen my new bike?

Mazen: My 2) bought it for me.

Nabil: 3)......did you get it?

Mazen : I got it last week.

Nabil : Can you 4).....it?

Mazen: Yes, I use force to get the bike to move by

pushing pedals.

Help your child deal with such auestions

I'm Amal. I want to be an astronaut because I'm interested in stars and the planets. It is important to study other planets because it helps us understand our own planet, and this might help us solve some of Earth's problems. When you see videos of the international space station, it looks fun living without gravity. The people float all the time. I have read a lot about the planet Mars and the research scientists are doing.

- A) Choose the correct answer.
- Amal wants to be a/an (doctor pilot engineer astronaut).
- Living without (gravity flood food water) will make people float all the time.
- B) Answer the following questions.
- Why is it important to study planets?
- Why do people float into space?
- (5) Choose the correct word.
- O A liquid and a (gas solid rock stone) don't have a fixed shape.
- Their teacher won't give them homework, (will won't can - is) he?
- (Veins Arteries Bones Muscles) move blood away from heart.
- They (go went has gone goes) to Jordan two years ago.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساءد طفلاء أن يتعاول مع مثل هذه الاستلة

4				
7	- 1	ΞY	ar	ns

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.		
owould -was - there - What -gravity no -hap	pen -if -?	
	•	
park -the - I -like -visiting		
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	••	
7 The Reader.		
A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).	,	\
1 Dugong eat leaves from mangrove trees.	(	)
Turtles lay their eggs in the sand.	(	)
B) Answer the following questions.		
How do gazelles help the acacia tree?		
Which ecosystem do the crocodiles live in?		4 1*
Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about	ut:	
What do you want to be?	1	
Guiding words:		
(astronaut - study - stars - planets - space sta	tion – gra	vity)
***************************************	********* ******* *** **	***** *** ***
	Phys 4x4 44mpv; 2 22344v.	***** ** **
***************************************	**** ********* *** **	***** *** ***
***************************************	** * ***********	***** *** ***
**************************************	P168211843456 A	

62 || Final Revision - Exams



## 4)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer.

- Egyptian people kept (goats buffaloes dogs bees) to
- In ancient Egypt, honey was (cheap expensive hot cold).
- Honey is an important (man-made natural artificial useless) resource.
- People used honey to make food taste (sweet salty sour awful).

## 2 Listen and complete.

- 1 The Sahara Desert is the ...... hot desert in the world.
- The Sahara Desert covers ......countries.
- 3 Some of the sand ...... can be 180 meters high.
- 4 It is a ..... and dry place.

## 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue.

Dalia : 1).....?

Rania: I've been to Luxor.

Dalia : 2) ?

Rania: To see the temples and enjoy the warm weather.

Dalia: How did you go there?

Rania : 2).....

Dalia: Who did you go with?

Rania : 4).....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلاً؛ أن يتعامل مع مثل مذه الأستئة.

Many people prefer to live in towns and big cities like Cairo and Dig Many people prefer to many people prefer to many people prefer to many people leave their lights, tall buildings Alexandria. They are attracted by their lights, tall buildings Alexandria. They are some leave their villages and live in towns and clubs. Many people leave their villages and live in towns where the chances of work are found. They work in big shops where the chances of and earn much money. Those people have forgotten that they're in need of the village and its crops, vegetables and fruits. Without the farmer, people would suffer much.

- A) Answer the following questions.
- Why do many people prefer to live in big cities?
- Where do we get crops?
- B) Choose the correct answer.
- Clubs and tall buildings are found in the (village city town - farm).
- People can go to the (cinema theatre restaurant bakery) to have a meal.
- (5) Choose the correct word.
- 1 always eat healthy diet, (and but so because) I exercise every day.
- My father has (travel traveled travels traveling) by bus.
- 3 (Friction Tension Spring Gravity) between the bike tyres and the road stops you from falling.
- You can't usually see a (solid gas liquid papyrus).

- 6 Order the words to make correct sentences.
- ## travelled on Have a ship you -?
- ø is-largest Cairo in the Egypt city .
- (7 The Reader.
- A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).
- Acacia trees need gazelles because they take their seeds to new places.
- ¿ Lake Nasser is a very big natural lake.
- B) Answer the following questions.
- What do Jubari and his mother drink in the Wadi?
- What does Wadi el Gemal mean in English?
- 8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Resources in ancient Egypt

Guiding words:

( successful - flax - linen - papyrus - books )

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسلة.



## Exam

**(5**)

1	Listen and	circle th	ie correct	answer.
	mineral country	CHICKE !!	ic correct	Will Danci.

- Mangrove trees can grow in (fresh salt sweet sour) water.
- Mangrove forests (protect damage destroy kill) the marine ecosystem.
- The leaves of mangrove trees take more (oxygen carbon dioxide water gas) from the air than other trees.
- Bees make special honey from the (roots leaves stems flowers) of mangrove trees.

#### 2 Listen and complete.

- When you open the fridge door, you are using a ...... force.
- Ocal is ... because you can only burn it once.
- Solar energy is a \_\_\_\_\_resource.

#### 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue.

Tom: Where did you go at the weekend?

Ann : 1)......

Tom : 2).....?

Ann : By car.

Tom: Who did you go with?

Tom : 4).....?

Ann : I played tennis.

Final Revision - Exams

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسللة.

During the summer holiday, Karim, his brother and sister went to Alexandria. One day they thought it was a nice idea to hire a boat as the weather was lovely. They hired a boat for ten pounds. They rowed till they were far from the shore. Suddenly the waves became very high, and the boat turned upside down. The children shouted for help. A man heard their shouts and quickly took off his clothes, jumped into the water and swam to them. He was able to save them and bring them safely to the shore.

- A) Answer the following questions.
- Where did Karim go during the summer holiday?
- What was their idea?
- B) Choose the correct answer.
- 3 They hired a boat because the weather was (bad ugly lovely - terrible).
- 4 (lady boy man woman) was able to save the children.
- (5) Choose the correct word.
- 1 The Sahara Desert is very (cool cold snowy hot) and dry.
- 2 If I (has have had haven't) a lot of money, I would buy a car.
- There isn't any grass to eat, so the rabbits(can can't will won't) be hungry.
- 1 You use a (pull push roll slide) force to move the pedals.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طملت ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأستله.



## Exam

6

# Listen and circle the correct answer.

- 5eleem is a (healthy unhealthy bad sad) boy.
- Seleem loves (parks · sports books cups).
- He doesn't eat a lot of (fruit vegetables chocolate rice).
- In the evening he wants to (relax play eat run).
- 2 Read and complete.

## luck - beautiful - patient - success

- I think the school concert will be a big
- Tarek is helping his little brother. He is very with him.
- The colorful birds in that tree are very
- The photographer had no ..... this morning. She didn't see a lion.
- Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

#### saw-been-family-enjoy

: Where have you 1). ... to? Adel

Maher: I've been to Aswan.

Adel : Did you go with your friends or with your 2).

Maher: I went with my friends.

: Did you 3)..... your time? Adel

Maher: Yes, I did.

: What did you see? Adel The High Dam.

Maher: I4) .

AL-BAHER - Connect Plus (5)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفاله أن يضامل بدع مثل هذه الأسلية



Mariam loved watching animals. She wanted to see what they see. One day, Mariam's dad came home. He had tickets for the Luxor airplane festival. Mariam was very excited. When the day arrived, Mariam and her family went to the festival. Mariam was with her parents when she saw a tall woman. Something fell. It was a photograph. Mariam picked it up because she wanted to give it back.

- A) Choose the correct answer.
- Mariam loved watching (birds animals cars insects).
- Mariam's dad had tickets for the Luxor airplane (ceremony feast - festival - bank).
- B) Answer the following questions.
- Why was Mariam very excited?
- Where did Mariam and her family go?

#### 5 Choose the correct word.

- 1 He played tennis, (don't doesn't didn't did) he?
- @ Water is a steam when you (cool boil freeze carry) it.
- 3 Abbas Ibn Firnas (planted invented played did) many things.
- He said I (like liked likes plays) English.

- 6 Order the words to make correct sentences.
- you-aship-Have-on-travelled-?
- oturns Water boil when it you steam to -.
- 7: The Reader.
- A) Answer the following questions.
- What did Jubari the gazelle learn from his mother?
- Why does Jubari leave the Wadi?
- B) Choose the correct answer
- Jubari was (afraid brave sad angry).
- Jubari and Subira were looking for (wood hood food hook).
- 8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Things people used in ancient Egypt

Guiding words:

(flax - linen - mud-bricks - honey - medicine - papyrus - paper )

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفاك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأستلة.



(1	Listen and	circle	the	correct	answer.
----	------------	--------	-----	---------	---------

- The lava and (flash ash splash crash) mix with mud flows.
- This makes soil (bad fertile sad ugly) where good food grows.
- O The (doctors farmers teachers bakers) thank the volcanoes for helping them.
- Lava and ash mix (at by with for) mud flows.
- 2 Listen and complete.
- Ali was \_\_\_\_\_\_ years old.
- @ He lived in the 9th ....
- 6 He worked on his father's ......
- 3 Read and complete the dialog.

Tarek : How are you Ahmed?

Ahmed: 1).

Tarek : 2)....

Ahmed: I'm doing my English homework.

Tarek : 3)....

Ahmed: Yes, I like English very much.

Tarek : Do you read stories in English?

Ahmed: 4).

Help your child deal with such questions.

منابع المثل المعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



sherif wanted to be an engineer when he was 10 years old. He always watched TV programs about robots, and he loved making things. When he was 13, he started helping a robot design company online. He did his school work in the day and in the evening he worked on his robot projects. This experience helped him to start his own company.

He said that the science and math lessons at school helped him to learn how to solve problems. He also found English very useful as it helps him work with people across the world.

- A) Choose the correct answer.
- 1 Sherif wanted to be an (doctor engineer teacher vet when he was 10.
- @ He loved (playing reading making going) things.
- B) Answer the following questions.
- When did he start helping a robot design company online?
- What subjects helped him to solve problems?
- 5 Choose the correct word.
- O Has he (travel traveled travels traveling) in a plane or a train?
- (Melt Freeze Speed Odor) is what subjects smell like.
- He uses a (pull push fall stop) force to move the pedals.
- This is Dina (which who when where) lives in Cairo.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسلة.

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.
a bike - you - Have - ridden - before - ?
to-used- <u>People</u> -mud-houses-build
7 The Reader.
A) Answer the following questions.
What did Jubari and his mother eat in the Wadi?
How do gazelles help the acacia trees?
B) Choose the correct answer  Jubari was born in (cave - home - wadi - habitat) el Gemal.  Their favorite food is (meat - fish - daffodil - trees).  Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:
(Sunlight)
Guiding words:  ( need - food - vitamin D - protect - sick - feel happy )
. «12/1/1/1/10 - 1/1/1/1 • 1/1/1/1/1/1/1/1/1/1/1/1/1/1/1
· · particularamente hamburementeleme
* ************************************

74 Final Revision - Exams

Help your child deal with such questions. مناعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسللة.





1 Listen and circle the correct answer. لص الاستماع في آخر الكتاب. It's (winter - spring - summer - autumn). Salma and her family are going for a holiday. @ Salma and her family are going to (Aswan - Luxor -Marsa Alam - Alexandria), @ Salma looks out of the (bus - car - train - plane) window. Salma sees a sign to Sukari (fine - mine - line - coin). 2 Listen and complete. 1 Mount Kilimanjaro is made of three These volcanoes haven't .....for thousands of years. 3 It is the ..... mountain in Africa. 1 It has lots of different ...... Read and complete the dialog with words from the box. club - best - football - games Do you enjoy playing 1)..... Waleed: Yes, I do. Khaled: What game do you like 2)....? Waleed: I like 3).....the best. Khaled: Where do you play it?

In the 4).... Waleed: Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه بأسطة

duranta de



Jack is a carpenter. He has a big workshop. He gets up at 6 o'clock in the morning. He has breakfast . Then, he goes to his workshop. He makes tables and chairs. He likes his job. Jack has two daughters and a son. His son is older than his daughters. On Friday, he doesn't go to work. He likes watching TV with his family.

- A) Answer the following questions.
- What is Jack's job?
- When does Jack get up?
- B) Choose the correct answer.
- Jack likes his (shop job cat dog).
- A carpenter can make (bread bikes tables vegetables).
- 5 Choose the correct word.
- I (tell tells have told telling) you this story already.
- When you boil water it turns from a liquid to a (gas liquid - solid - ice).
- He said he (plant planted plants planting) trees.
- Abbas Ibn Firnas was a great (teacher doctor inventor)

- 6 order the words to make correct sentences.
- o can-pour-You-into-aliquid-acup-.
- odoing-are-What-tomorrow you ?
- 7 The Reader.
- A) Answer the following questions.
- How did Jubari know that the crocodile was dangerous?
- Why is Wadi el Gemal the perfect place for gazelles?
- B) (hoose the correct answer
- Subira taught Jubari which (animals places food insects) were dangerous.
- Jubari and Subira's favorite food was (roots fish meat daffodils).
- 8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### A school trip

Guiding words: (last - family - arrived - pyramids - sphinx - museum - tower - nice time)



78

## (9)

A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	
1 Listen and circle the correct answer.	
Mr Taha works at the (park museum school temple).	
Our class is learning about natural (courses resources houses - forces).	
They are talking about resources in (old new modern ancient) Egypt.	
O Ancient Egypt had (little - few - a lot - less) of resources.	
2 Listen and complete.	
We learned that the water comes from an in the desert.	
O An oasis a place in the with water.	
The water eight kilometers from the oasis to the lake.	
The water travels through a	
3 Read and complete the dialog.	
Dina : 1)	
Habiba : My favorite subject is English.	
Dina : 2)	7
Habiba : Because it is fun.	
Dina : 3)	
Habiba: Mr Ahmed is our teacher.	
Help your child deal with such questions.  المال الما	



One summer evening, I was sitting by the open window reading a new story. After a time, it became too dark to read easily. 50 I put the book down and went up to switch on the light. I was just about to draw the curtains as well, when I heard a loud cry of help! It seemed to come from the trees at the end of the garden. I looked out, but I saw nothing. I used my torch to see my way back home. When I reached the window near the door of the house, I saw a bird sitting on the top of the window. It was a large green and red bird. It was a parrot. It was repeating "Help", but in a weak voice.

- A) Answer the following questions.
- Why did the writer go to the garden?
- Where did the writer think the loud cry come from?
- B) Choose the correct answer.
- 3 The writer used a torch to (read his book see his way open the window - climb the tree).
- It was a (parrot boy man girl) which cried for help.
- 5 Choose the correct word.
- They like English, (does do don't didn't) they?
- If he ran, he (will would may can) catch the bus.
- I use a (towel shovel bang rope) to dig in the mountains.
- This soil is very (fertile bad ugly poor). We can plant many crops.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد صملك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الاستلة.



- filler the words to make correct sentences.
- flax used to linen.
- 🥑 like-be- would-I-to-a teacher-.

#### (7 The Reader.

- A) Answer the following questions.
- Why did Jubari leave home?
- How did Jubari feel when he climbed the mountain?
- (B) Choose the correct answer
- Subira showed Jubari where to rest on (hot windy cold rainy) days.
- They got enough water to survive from (acacia leaves sea grass roots daffodils).
- Mrite a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### A picnic

#### Guiding words:

Final Revision - Exams

( picnic - family - fun - play - football - happy - nice time )





# Exam

(10,

Listen and circle the correct answer.  (Copper was a very important (
دم الاستماع في اخر الكتاب Copper was a very important (medal - metal - pedal - food).
1 It was (difficult - hard - easy - funny) to bend.
people used it to make (tools - pools - rulers - rolls).
We can see a lot of copper today in Egyptian (parks - zoos - museums - banks).
2 Listen and complete.
O I've decided what I wanted to do.
② I want to be an and design buildings.
3 I'm really in designing buildings.
1 think we need to design better buildings in the
3 Read and complete.
Gravity - who - freeze - ecosystem
1 The Amazon rainforest is a very important
When youwater it turns from a liquid to a solid.
usually pulls things to the ground.
We met a manworks in a garden.
AL-BAHER - Connect Plus (5) 81

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



It's a beautiful day. It is hot and the sun is shining. The sky is blue and the birds are singing. A man is sitting next to the river. He is fishing. He wants a fish for his basket which is empty. He has not got a fish. Look! A big fish is swimming in the river. The man can see it. "Come here!" the man says loudly. What has he got? It is swimming quickly down the river. The man didn't catch it because it was just an old shoe.

- A) Answer the following questions.
- What is the weather like?
- Why does the man want the fish?
- B) Choose the correct answer.
- The man is sitting (in a boat next to a river under a tree
   by the window).
- The man didn't catch it because it was just (a big fish an old shoe an old boat a shark).
- (5 Choose the correct word.
- I have another cousin (which where who what ) lives near a wadi.
- He is poor, (and but so because) he is happy.
- The old cheese has a bad (speed odor sound melt).
- My favorite bird is the (monkey flamingo donkey lion).
- (82) Final Revision Exams

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأستلة.

- 6 Order the words to make correct sentences.
- are-high-How-waterfalls-the-?
- nave-didn't-She-chicken-breakfast-for-.
- (7) The Reader.
- A) Answer the following questions.
- Why did Jubari run all the way home?
- 2 How do gazelles help the acacia trees?
- B) Choose the correct answer
- 3 Jubari thinks that the desert is (bad good perfect ugly) for them to run.
- Jubari climbed the mountain. It was very (speed steep sleepy - bad).
- (8) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Things you do on weekends

Guiding words:

(play - visit - help - watch - beach)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل عده الأستلة.





(1)	Listen and	circle	the	correct	answer.
-----	------------	--------	-----	---------	---------

- Water comes from an (lake river sea oasis).
- It is a place in the (bank desert school zoo) with water.
- The water travels (seven five six eight) kilometers.
- The water travels through a (tube valley tunnel tune).
- Listen and complete.
- 1 Humans need .....
- We can't make our own \_\_\_\_\_\_
- We get \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ D from sunlight.

### 3 Read and complete the dialog.

1)..... Omar

My favourite sport is tennis. Ahmad

How often do you practise it? Omar

2)..... Ahmad

Do you have healthy diet? Omar

3)..... Ahmad

4).....? Omar

I eat a lot of dairy products. Ahmad

Help your child deal with such questions. Final Revision - Exams ساعد طفلك أن يِتَعامِل مع مثل عدْه الأسللة.

English is an interesting language. It's spoken by a lot of people in different countries. More people are learning it all over the world. Learning English is not so difficult, but unless you use it quite often, you'll forget it. A foreign language gives you the real chance to read and know how other people think and live. This will make you know a lot about the wide world if you ever think of going to foreign countries. You'll find English more useful. Good English gives you better chance for work.

- A) Answer the following questions.
- Why is a foreign language useful?
- Where is English spoken?
- B) Choose the correct answer.
- (Few All Many Little) people speak English around the world.
- ⊕ Good English gives you better chance for good (school job) - sport - house).
- (5) Choose the correct word.
- This is the place (what where who which) I live.
- To increase the speed, (pull push plant -play) the pedals more quickly.
- Bees live in houses called (lives knives hives wifes).
- 4 He said he (buy buys bought buying) a car.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأستلة.



6 0	rder	the	words	to	make	correct	sent	ences.
-----	------	-----	-------	----	------	---------	------	--------

- 1 the visited Have desert you ?
- sunlight from get We vitamin D .
- 7 The Reader.
- A) Answer the following questions.
- Why was Wadi el Gemal the perfect place for gazelles?
- What did Subira show Jubari?
- B) Choose the correct answer
- 3 The mountains were too (narrow steep high shallow).
- Jubari and Subira's favourite food was (roots daffodils seeds meat).
- 8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### Healthy Diet

#### Guiding words:

86

(fat - sugar - vitamins - vegetables - energy - carbohydrates - healthy - good for)

Final Revision - Exams

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفاناً أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.